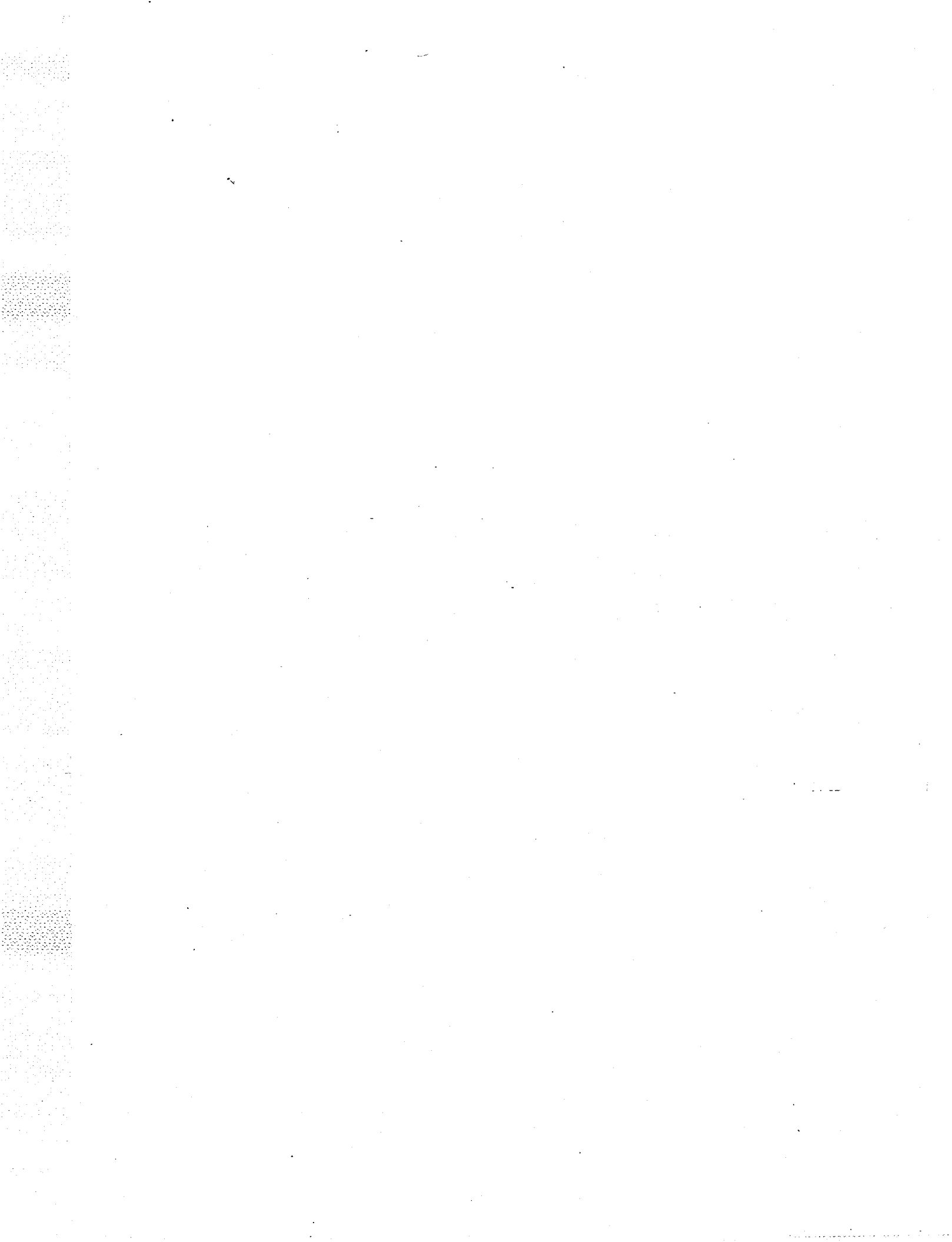


C H I N E S E - C A N T O N E S E  
REFRESHER COURSE

VOLUME II  
Instructional Units 31-60

March 1966

DEFENSE LANGUAGE INSTITUTE  
FOREIGN LANGUAGE CENTER



CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

MATERIALS

Printed Material: 1 vol. Introduction  
1 vol. Instructional Units 1-30  
1 vol. Instructional Units 31-60  
1 vol. Instructional Units 61-90  
1 vol. Instructional Units 91-120  
1 vol. Instructional Units 121-140  
1 vol. Instructor's Manual  
1 vol. Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60  
1 vol. \*Formal Testing Units 1-10  
\*Formal Testing Units Answer Sheet

Reference Material: 1 vol. Dictionary of Common Chinese-Cantonese Characters  
1 vol. List of Basic Chinese-Cantonese Military Words

Recorded Material: 140 reels Instructional Units 1-140  
60 reels Language Laboratory Practice Units 1-60  
10 reels \*Formal Testing Units 1-10

Film Material: 1 reel "Free China's Fighting Men"  
MF 30-8444  
1 reel "Mighty Chinese Armed Forces"  
USALS-86  
1 reel "Production of Combat Intelligence"  
TF 30-1494

\*FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

PRINTED MATERIALS

This volume contains 30 fifty-minute instructional units (Instructional Units 31 through 60) designed for classroom instruction. Each unit contains the following parts:

Oral Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in oral fluency. New elements of the language are introduced for review and study in this part only. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. It is transcribed in romanization, calligraphed in Chinese characters, and translated into idiomatic English.

Reading Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in reading. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. There is a gradual development from conversational to literary style. It is calligraphed in Chinese characters.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. It is transcribed in romanization. The questions and approved answers, calligraphed in Chinese characters, are in the Instructor's Manual.

Vocabulary and Notes. This part contains a complete list of vocabulary and grammatical notes which are intended for study by the student and support current or subsequent materials.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

RECORDED MATERIALS

As the classroom supervisor or instructor available may or may not be a native linguist, each Instructional Unit is supported by one individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

Oral Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Reading Material. This part also contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Instructional Units, the following study procedures are to be observed when the classroom supervisor or instructor available is not a native linguist:

1. Listen to the Oral Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.
2. Repeat after the Oral Material Repeat Practice. Refer to the printed material, if necessary.
3. Listen to the Reading Material Listening Practice. Refer to the printed material.

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

4. Repeat after the Reading Material Repeat Practice.  
Refer to the printed material.
5. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.
6. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.
7. If more time is available, repeat Step 2 and 4.

## CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

### INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

#### CORRELATED MATERIALS

Instructional Units 31 through 60 are to be correlated with 13 fifty-minute language laboratory practice units (Language Laboratory Practice Units 14 through 26) designed for individual practice. Each unit contains the following parts:

Aural Comprehension Material. The aim of this part is to maintain and develop the student's ability in aural comprehension. No new element of the language is introduced in this part. The style of this part is in conversational Cantonese Chinese. As this part is for aural comprehension, no printed material is necessary for the student. This part, transcribed in romanization, is in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Questions. This part is an informal check-up test of the student's ability to master the materials in the unit. No printed material is necessary for the student. The questions and approved answers, transcribed in romanization, are in the Language Laboratory Practice Units.

Instead of printed material, the student is issued an individual reel of pre-recorded tape designed to be used in a tape language course with a minimum of supervision. All tapes are for use on dual channel type magnetic tape recorder and are properly identified. Each tape contains the following parts:

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

Aural Comprehension Material. This part contains listening and repeat practice.

Questions. This part contains a number of questions. Blank spaces are provided on the tape for the student to record his answers.

For Language Laboratory Practice Units, the following study procedures are to be observed:

1. Listen to the Aural Comprehension Material Listening Practice.
2. Repeat after Aural Comprehension Material Repeat Practice.
3. Answer all questions. Record answers on blank spaces provided between questions.
4. Rewind the tape and play back for self-evaluation.
5. If more time is available, repeat Step 1, 2, 3, and 4, and/or record at the end of the tape a resumé of the Aural Comprehension Material.



CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

TESTING MATERIALS

Instructional Units 31 through 60 and Language Laboratory Practice Units 14 through 26 are to be further correlated with 2 fifty-minute formal testing units (Formal Testing Units 3 and 4) designed to test the student's mastery of the materials in these units. Specific instructions and guidance to the student in connection with the tests are given in each of the Formal Testing Units which are "For Official Use Only".

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

SCHEDULE

4th Wk				5th Wk				6th Wk			
M	Hr	46	IU 31	M	Hr	61	IU 41	M	Hr	76	IU 51
		47	IU 32			62	IU 42			77	IU 52
		48	LLPU 14			63	FTU 3			78	LLPU 23
T	Hr	49	IU 33	T	Hr	64	IU 43	T	Hr	79	IU 53
		50	IU 34			65	IU 44			80	IU 54
		51	LLPU 15			66	LLPU 19			81	LLPU 24
W	Hr	52	IU 35	W	Hr	67	IU 45	W	Hr	82	IU 55
		53	IU 36			68	IU 46			83	IU 56
		54	LLPU 16			69	LLPU 20			84	FTU 4
T	Hr	55	IU 37	T	Hr	70	IU 47	T	Hr	85	IU 57
		56	IU 38			71	IU 48			86	IU 58
		57	LLPU 17			72	LLPU 21			87	LLPU 25
F	Hr	58	IU 39	F	Hr	73	IU 49	F	Hr	88	IU 59
		59	IU 40			74	IU 50			89	IU 60
		60	LLPU 18			75	LLPU 22			90	LLPU 26

IU - Instructional Unit

LLPU - Language Laboratory Practice Unit

FTU - Formal Testing Unit

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

CONTENTS

Instructional Unit	Page
31	1
32	12
33	21
34	29
35	40
36	49
37	60
38	71
39	82
40	89
41	98
42	109
43	119
44	127
45	135
46	143
47	151
48	158
49	168
50	178
51	188
52	198

CHINESE-CANTONESE REFRESHER COURSE

INSTRUCTIONAL UNITS 31-60

Instructional Unit	Page
53	205
54	214
55	224
56	234
57	242
58	252
59	262
60	269

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

ORAL MATERIAL

Paāk Shiù-Kaaù: Cheung Sheung-Wai, tsz̄-t's'ung ngõh-tei lei-hoi Lük-Kwan Uē-Īn Hòk-Haaù, pat-king pat-kòk ĩ-king shēng nīn. Yān-sz̄ pīn-waân, yaũ uē paāk wān t'in-kaú. Ooi-yik kwòh-hui yat nīn, sui-īn mǒ mat shīng-tsaũ, taân-hai ngõh kòk-tak tsui hók kò-wai ché hai t's'uí-chóh kòh hó lǒ-p'òh, yaũ yat-kòh hó chi-keí, tak yat-fān yau ch'aaí...

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Seung-hei-lai chan-hai hó-ts'z̄ yat-ch'eung mung kóm-yeung\*. Ngõh chūng kei-yik-tak nei kè T'aaí-T'aaí\* hai yaũ ngõh kaaí-shiũ nei shik kè. Taân-hai mǒ keí noi, nei leung-wai\* tsaũ faat-shang luên\*-oi. Lõh-maân-sz̄ shing-kung, kui-īn\* kit fan, ĩ-ka nei ĩ-king shing ka laap shat, uēn-shing yān-shaang yat-kīn taaí sz̄. Taân-hai ngõh yik-to suèn hó-ts'oi. Ngõh tak-faan ngõh kè koon-chik, ĩ-ch'é yaũ yaũ kòm hó kei-ooi t'ung-maaí nei yat-ts'ai tsô sz̄.

P: Ngõh-tei kam-ts'z̄ pei p'aaí-lai Uēn-Tung. Ngõh-tei kè yām-mò kòm chūng-iù. Ngõh-tei iù ĩn-kaù toh ti kwaan-ue Chung-Kwòk kè yě, ĩn-hai chī hók-ĩ uēn-shing ngõh-tei kè yām-mò.

C: Nei kóng chan tui là. Ngõh-tei iù ĩn-kaù toh ti kwaan-ue Chung-Kwòk kè ching-foó, ngoi-kaau, kwan-sz̄, king-tsaí, kaau-t'ung, kaaù-yük ni ti kóm-yeung\* kè yě. Uē-kwóh ngõh-tei yaũ ni ti kè sheung-shik, ngõh-tei kung-tsòk fong-pīn-tak toh.

P: T'ing-yat ngõh-tei iù hui shaũ fàn. Ni chūng kè fàn-līn hai yung ĩn-kóng shik t'ung t'ó-lūn shik lai tsô kè. Ts'ing nei m-hó ch'i-tò à.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

C: Ngǒh kei-tak là. Ngǒh ooĩ chún-peĩ hó là. Haĩ kòm tóh là?  
Chũng yaũ mi-yě k'ei-t'a fan-foò mǎ à, Paâk Shiù-Kaau?

P: Haĩ kòm-toh là. ǎ-Chim.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

Major White: Capt Cheung. It is hard to realize that it has been a year since we left the US Army Language School. The year passed so quickly and so many things have changed. As I recall what I did last year, there was hardly anything spectacular. However, it is most gratifying that I have gotten married, that I have you as my close friend, and that I have an excellent assignment...

Capt Cheung: Come to think of it, it was just like a dream. I still remember that you met your wife through my introduction. Somehow, you two fell in love with each other, and after a whirlwind romance, you two were married. Now that you have a family, you have completed one of the Chinese so-called major events in a human life. As for me, I have been very fortunate also. I have gotten back my commission and have an opportunity to serve with you.

W: Our orders have brought us to the Far East and our mission is so important. We have to do more research on various aspects of China before we can accomplish our mission.

C: You are absolutely right. We have to study the government, foreign relations, military affairs, economy, transportation, education and other things as well. It will facilitate our work if we have this knowledge.

W: We have to attend an orientation tomorrow. I understand this will be given in the manner of lectures and discussions.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

Please, don't be late.

C: No, sir. I'll be well prepared. Will that be all, sir? Are there any other instructions, Major?

W: That will be all, Jim.





演講式同討論式黎做嘅。請你唔  
好遲到呀。

張：我記得啦。我會準備好啦。係咁多啦？  
重有乜野其他吩咐呀。白少校？

白：係咁多啦。亞占。

READING MATERIAL

憶想「人俗人  
回·謂以二  
再感所所張  
後之正·白  
之定，嘅·  
去無夢實真」  
過幻場事有一  
當變一成境之  
每，飛烟會，例  
物如陣時夢係  
事快一時如事  
之其似夢生之  
上有好但「人年  
界總時·：一  
世，有夢話去  
時黎如有過  
之起生語在

言任績上，完在，庭場  
語擔成由外·人白家如  
軍廈務張之室二是好真  
陸大服·此立張其美憶  
開角，校除家白尤有回  
離五力少·成，；又後  
年頓努至尉，之大，事  
去盛作升上婚言不外·  
自華工白一結而謂之事  
士至因·職而總可就之  
上派·級官愛·不名賀  
張被作升之戀事就成可  
，後工都來由大成功喜事  
尉先之人原士生之上可日  
上，項兩佢女人年業最昨  
白後事，至黃件一事佢如  
校密良升與一去在係，  
學保優士白成過除此夢

大多經  
重，  
務訓練事  
任訓軍  
，別，  
作特交  
工受外  
東要，題  
遠人府問  
至二政  
派佢之  
被，國通  
張便中交  
，方於，  
白作關育  
現工究教  
如使研，  
多濟

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

QUESTIONS

1. Tsž-tš'ung Cheung Sheung-Sž t'ung Paak Sheung-Wai lei-hoi Lük-Kwan Uē-Īn Hōk-Haaū chi haū, pat-king pat-kōk ĩ-king kei noi là?
2. Neĩ keĩ shĩ lei-hoi Lük-Kwan Uē-Īn Hōk-Haaū kà?
3. Ooi-yik kwòh-hui keĩ nĩn, neĩ yaũ ti mi-yě shing-tsaũ à?
4. Hai kwòh-hui yat nĩn chung, Paak Sheung-Wai yaũ mi-yě shing-tsaũ à?
5. Neĩ ĩ-ka tsō-kán mi-yě kung-tsòk à?
6. Neĩ t'ung neĩ kè T'aaĩ-T'aaĩ\* hai tím-yeung\* kit fan kà?
7. Paak Sheung-Wai ĩ-ka kè koon-chik hai mi-yě à?
8. Cheung Sheung-Sž ne?
9. K'ui-teĩ ĩ-ka peĩ p'aaĩ hui pin shuè kung-tsòk à?
10. Neĩ tui-ue Chung-Kwòk kè ching-foó, ngoĩ-kaau, kwan-sž, king-tsaĩ, kaau-t'ung, kaaũ-yük, fung-tsük, tsaap-kwaan, pin chung tsui yaũ hing-ts'ui à?
11. Neĩ kòk-tak ni keĩ chung yě, pin chung chi kán-iù à? Tím-kaaĩ kòm kán-iù à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

pat-king pat-kòk without realizing it, not knowing, not perceiving, unconsciously; a.f.: m-chi m-kòk IU 9, pat-chi pat-kòk (lit)

yān-sz̄ pìn-waân yān-sz̄ 'personal affairs, human affairs';  
pìn-waân 'change, variation, transformation, mutation, illusion',  
 synonym: pìn-ts'in, pìn-fà, koí-pìn, ts'in (lit), pìn; yān-sz̄  
pìn-waân 'people come and go, the change of human affairs'

paâk wān t'in-kaú paâk 'white'; wān 'cloud'; paâk-wān  
 'white cloud'; t'in 'sky, Heaven, Providence'; kaú 'dog'; paâk-  
 wān t'in-kaú 'the white clouds change into a grey dog' used to  
 illustrate the unexpected in the changing conditions of the times;  
 a.f.: paâk-wān ch'ong-kaú

ooí-yik ooí (lit) 'to return, to be back, times'; ooí-yik  
 'to retrospect, to recall, to recollect, recollection, recall, re-  
 trospect'; synonym: ooí seúng, yik (lit), seúng tong nín

kwòh-huí past, formerly, in olden days, before; synonym:  
í-ts'in IU 13, ts'ung-ts'in, sik-yât (lit), sik (lit)

kò-wai kò (lit) 'to say to, to report to, to inform, to  
 announce, to sue'; wai (lit) 'to console, to pacify, to comfort',  
 synonym: on-wai, wai-mân; kò wai 'to feel being comforted, it is a  
 comfort, it is quite a relief'

ché impersonal pronoun, that, those, one; tsoi-ché 'post-  
 script, furthermore'

ts'uì (ts'uí, ts'ó) to take a wife, to marry (man); pat  
ts'uì 'to stay single'

lǒ-p'òh wife; a.f.: t'aaí-t'aaí\*, noí-tsú, noí-yān\*, nuí-  
yān\*, ts'ai; ts'uí lǒ-p'òh (ts'ó lǒ-p'òh) 'to take a wife'

chi-keí keí (lit) 'oneself', a.f.: tsz̄-keí (colloq); chi-  
keí 'bosom friend, good friend, real friend'

fân a part, a share, a portion, a position; yat-fân 'a,  
 a copy'; shâp-fân chi yat 'one-tenth'; pô-fân 'part, portion,  
 share'

yau excellent, outstanding, superior, abundant, plenty,  
 superb; synonym: yau-leung; yau-tim 'good points, merits'

ch'aaí job, employment, to send; synonym: ch'aaí-sz̄, chik-  
wai; ch'ut kung-ch'aaí 'TDY'; yau ch'aaí 'good job'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

ch'eūng A.N. of an affair, an area of level ground, an open space, arena for drill

mûng a dream, to dream; AN: ch'eūng; vat ch'eūng mûng 'a dream'; faät mûng 'to dream'

luên\*-oi luên\* 'to indulge in'; laū luên\* 'to indulge in'; oi 'to love, to like'; luên\*-oi 'to be in love with, love between two sexes'; faät-shaang luên\*-hoi 'to fall in love'

lōh-maân s'z lōh-maân 'romantic'; lōh-maân s'z 'romance'

kui-in\* contrary to expectations, after all, to presume on, reserved

shīng ka laâp shat ka (lit) 'family'; shat 'a home, household, house, apartment, room'; ka-shat 'family, home'; laâp (lit) 'to establish, to erect, to stand up'; shīng 'to complete, to perfect, to become, finished'; shīng-laâp 'to found, founding'; shīng ka laâp shat 'to have a family and career'

uēn-shīng to accomplish, to complete; yām-mô uēn-shīng 'mission accomplished'

yān-shaang .life; yān-shaang taaî s'z 'big event in one's life marriage'

suèn to regard as, to consider, to reckon, to calculate, to count

Uēn-Tung uēn 'far, distant, remote'; tung 'east'; Uēn-Tung 'Far East'; Kân-Tung 'Near East'; Chung-Tung 'Middle East'

ngoî-kaau diplomacy, foreign relation, foreign affairs

king-tsaî economics, economy, economical; synonym: p'ēng, m-kwai, king-tsaî hōk 'economics'

kaau-t'ung communication, transportation, traffic

sheūng-shik common sense, knowledge

shaū fàn shaū 'to receive' IU 16; fàn (abbr. of fàn-lîn) 'to train, training'; shaū fàn 'to receive training, to attend orientation'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 31

shik form, pattern, type, style, fashion, model, example, sample

t'ó-lûn to discuss, to deliberate, to change opinion; synonym: sheung-t'ó (lit), t'ó (lit), sheung (lit), sheung-leung, sheung-i

chún-peî to prepare, to get ready; a.f.: peî (lit), uê-peî

fan-foò to command, to give order, to give instruction; synonym: tsuk (lit), kaau-taai (colloq)

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

## ORAL MATERIAL

Hōh Chung-Kaaú: Ngǒn kam-yât shóh kóng kè hái kwaan-ue Chung-Kwòk kè mìn-tsik yān-haú tei-yīng kè yě. Chung-Kwòk kè mìn-tsik taaí-yeùk\* yaú kaú-ts'at-saam-yat-saam-ngǎ-ngǎ fong-kung-leĩ. Taaí-yeùk\* chìm À-Chau sei-fân chi yat, chìm ts'uēn shai-kaaí lûk-tei mìn-tsik shâp-ngǎ-fân chi yat. Hái À-Chau tai-yat taaí kwòk, shai-kaaí tai-saam taaí kwòk... Chung-Kwòk ts'ūng-loi mǒ yān-haú t'iu-ch'ā. Taân-hái kan-kui Chung-Kwòk kè ch'ak-suèn, yān-haú taaí-yeùk\* yaú lûk-maân-maân tsóh-yaú\*. Chìm ts'uēn shai-kaaí yān-haú ngǎ-fân chi yat, hái shai-kaaí kòk kwòk yān-haú tsui toh kè kwòk-ka... Chung-Kwòk kè tei-yīng fei-sheūng chi fuk-tsaâp. Shaan-tei chìm tsuēn kwòk paák-fân chi saam-shâp. Ko-uēn chìm paák-fân chi saam-shâp-sei, yau-līng chìm paák-fân chi kaú, p'oōn-tei chìm paák-fân chi shâp-lûk, p'īng-uēn chìm paák-fân chi shâp... Chung-Kwòk kè hoí-ngôn sìn paát-lûk-saam-līng kung-leĩ ch'eūng. Uēn-ngôn yaú m-shiú hoí tó, hoí waan, kóng haú... Chung-Kwòk kè hei-haú hái taaí-lûk hei-haú. Hâ-t'in fei-sheūng chi ít, tung-t'in fei-sheūng chi laǎng...

Paák Shiú-Kaaú: Chung-Kwòk pak pîn t'ūng naām pîn kè hei-haú seung ch'a keí uēn ne?

H: Hâ-t'in kè shī-haú, pak pîn t'ūng naām pîn mǒ mat m-t'ūng. Taân-hái tung-t'in tsaū m-t'ūng là. Hâ-t'in seung ch'a shiú-kwòh Shíp Shī shâp tô. Tung-t'in seung ch'a taaí-yeùk\* sei-shâp tô. Wā-Naām uē kwai hái ngǎ-uēt. Wā-Chung lûk-uēt. Wā-Pak ts'at-uēt.



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

Lt Colonel Hōh: The topics which I wish to talk about today include China's area, population, and topography. The area of China is approximately 9,731,355 square kilometers. It is about 1/4 of the land of Asia and 1/15 of the world. It is the largest country in Asia and the third largest in the World...

No census of the entire Chinese population has ever been taken. However, according to estimates, the population is about 600,000,000. It is about 1/5 of the population of the World and is the World's largest in population... Within the boundaries of China are arrayed numerous physiographic features which include almost every known type of topographic expression. Mountains occupy 30 per cent of the national area, plateaus 34 per cent, hilly regions 9 per cent, basins 16 percent, and alluvial plains 10 per cent...

The coast-line of China is about 8,630 kilometers. Along the coast, there are innumerable islands, inlets and harbors...

China has a continental climate--extreme heat in Summer and extreme cold in Winter...

Major White: What is the difference in temperature between north and south in China?

H: The difference is much reduced in summer but is greatly

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

accentuated in winter. In summer, the difference is less than  $10^{\circ}\text{C}$ . In winter, about  $40^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Maximum rainfall comes mostly in May in South China, in June in Central China, and in July in North China.

何中校：積約約地國，面積大陸大，面積世界第一。但係六之家山百，分國面里世第。但有分國。佔九百中。公全洲。查大。口多。複高。分原。於國。方佔亞。調查。大口。最之。百平。關中五，係。調口人最之。百。係。五。一。一。口人。界口。常十。佔。嘅野。三。之。國。人。世。人。非。三。陵。六。講。嘅。一。份。份。大。有。算。全。國。形。之。邱。十。所。形。三。四。五。三。來。測。佔。各。地。份。之。日。地。七。洲。十。第。從。嘅。界。嘅。百。四。分。今。口。九。亞。積。界。國。國。右。世。國。國。十。百。我。人。有。佔。面。世。中。中。左。係。中。全。三。佔。

長。口。天。非。幾。遠。但。過。度。月。里。港。夏。相。差。同。差。四。北。公。灣。候。冷。候。相。差。也。天。大。六。三。海。氣。之。氣。有。夏。差。中。六。島。大。非。便。南。便。相。華。八。島。大。非。便。南。便。相。華。線。海。係。天。南。同。同。冬。五。岸。少。候。冬。同。便。唔。係。海。唔。氣。冬。同。便。北。就。度。季。嘅。有。嘅。熱。北。候。天。十。雨。國。岸。國。之。國。？。時。冬。氏。南。中。沿。中。常。中。呢。嘅。係。攝。華。

白少校：夏天  
何：夏天

二題育究講  
 人，之式  
 白現如人辦同  
 少受中口法討  
 校特國，有論  
 ，別政氣多式  
 張訓府候種  
 上練，，  
 尉，軍風巨  
 被研事俗地  
 派究，習所  
 去對外慣用  
 遠中交，之  
 東國，語辦  
 工有經言法  
 作關濟……包  
 ，之，教研演  
 巨問教研演

巨所何中  
 今講受校  
 日者訓講  
 係係者得  
 受關多極  
 訓於係有  
 之中新系  
 第國近統  
 一之由  
 日面美聽  
 ，積來者  
 由，華對  
 何人工之  
 中口作極  
 校，之感  
 主地軍興  
 講形官趣  
 巨所何中

東南，山  
 中近係地  
 國海亞  
 在·洲盆  
 亞其第地  
 洲面一同  
 大陸積大平  
 陸佔國原  
 ；全·較  
 在世其少  
 日界地  
 本面大邱  
 ，積部陵  
 韓十份更  
 國五係少  
 之分高  
 西之原

大如  
 中氣不  
 國候同  
 之·  
 氣夏  
 候熱  
 同冬  
 北冷  
 美，  
 洲同  
 者美  
 相國  
 差加  
 無者  
 幾之  
 ，四  
 係季

口至人  
 中多口  
 國·分  
 人廣散  
 口東國  
 佔在內  
 全中各  
 世國省  
 界之，  
 第南同  
 一，世  
 ，係界  
 沿華各  
 海南國  
 各一  
 省大  
 人省

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

QUESTIONS

1. Paâk Shiù-Kaaù t'ūng Cheung Sheūng-Wai í-ka hui shaū fân.  
K'ui-teí iù ín-kaù ti mi-yě mân-t'ai à?
2. Chung-Kwòk kè mìn-tsik taaí-yeùk\* chím À-Chau mìn-tsik keí-fân chi keí à?
3. À-Chau chì taaí kè kwòk-ka haí pin kwòk à?
4. Pak Meí-Chau chì taaí kè kwòk-ka kiù tsô mi-yě mēng\* à?
5. Ts'uēn shai-kaaí chì taaí kè kwòk-ka kiù tsô mi-yě mēng\* à?
6. Chung-Kwòk kè yān-haú taaí-yeùk\* yaú keí toh à?
7. Chung-Kwòk kè yān-haú chím ts'uēn shai-kaaí yān-haú keí-fân chi keí à?
8. Meí-Kwòk pin-kòh shīng-shí kè yān-haú tsui toh à?
9. Naú-Yeùk shí kè yān-haú taaí-yeùk\* keí toh à?
10. Chung-Kwòk kè teí-yīng, mi-yě chím tsui toh à?
11. Taaí-lúk heí-haú haí tím-yeūng\* kà?
12. Ka-Shaáng kè uě kwai taaí-yeùk\* haí keí shí à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

mîn-tsik area, surface

yān-haú population

teî-yīng teî 'land, ground, floor, place, area'; yīng 'figure, appearance, form, body, to take shape, visible'; teî-yīng 'terrain, topography', synonym: 'physiographic feature'

fong kung-leī fong 'square, direction, surname'; tung fong 'east'; sei-fong 'square, four directions, everywhere'; ch'eūng-fong 'rectangular'; fong-in 'local dialect'; kung 'public'; lei 'li (Chinese mile)'; kung-leī 'kilometer'; fong kung-leī 'square kilometer'

chīm to occupy, to seize, to capture (place), to share, to usurp, to take by force, to encroach upon; synonym: chīm-līng

lūk teî lūk 'ground, dry land, six, surname'; lūk teî 'dry land'

yān-haú t'iū-ch'ā ch'ā 'to investigate, to seek out, to search into, it would appear, it seems that..., I find that..., to inquire'; t'iū-ch'ā 'to investigate, investigation'; yān-haú 'population'; yān-haú t'iū-ch'ā 'census'

ch'ak-suèn ch'ak 'to estimate, to measure, to fathom, to guess'; ch'ak suèn 'to calculate, to estimate, to survey, survey, estimation'

kòk various, all, every, miscellaneous

fuk-tsaâp tsaâp 'assorted, mixed, confused, miscellaneous'; fuk-tsaâp 'complicated, complex'

ko-uēn ko 'tall, high, highly, surname'; uēn (lit)- 'original, originally, at first'; ko-uēn 'plateau'

yau-līng yau 'a mound, a hill, a place'; yau-līng 'a mound, mound, hilly region'

p'oōn-teî p'oōn 'basin, bowl'; mīn p'oōn 'wash basin'; p'oōn-teî 'basin (terrain)'

p'īng-uēn p'īng 'flat, level, even, just, ordinary, common, reasonable'; p'īng-uēn 'plain (terrain), alluvial plain'

hoi-ngôn sìn hoi 'sea'; ngôn 'bank (sea, river), shore';

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

sheŭng ngôn 'to go ashore, to land'; maaí ngôn 'to come to shore'; hoi-ngôn 'coast'; sín 'line, thread'; hoi-ngôn sín 'coast-line'

uēn ngôn uēn 'to follow a course, to go along, to coast, to hand down, to continue, along or by (a road, a coast)'; uēn hoí 'along the sea'; uēn sín 'land on each side of a railway or highway'; uēn lô 'along the road, the whole way'; uēn ngôn 'along the coast'

hoí tó tó 'island'; hoí tó 'sea island, island'; poòn-tó 'peninsula'

hoí waan waan 'bay'; hoí waan 'bay, inlet'

kóng haú kóng 'port, harbor'; kóng-haú 'port, harbor'

taaí-lúk heí-haú taaí-lúk 'mainland'; heí-haú 'climate'; taaí-lúk heí-haú 'continental climate'

hâ-t'in Summer; abbr.: hâ

î-t hot, heat, passionate; î-t'in (colloq) 'Summer'

tung-t'in Winter; abbr: tung; ch'un-t'in 'Spring', abbr: ch'un; ts'au-t'in 'Autumn', abbr: ts'au

pak pîn pak 'north, northern'; pîn 'side, direction, convenient'; pak pîn 'north side, north'; naām pîn 'south side, south'; sai pîn 'west side, west'; tung pîn 'east side, east'; tung naām 'southeast'; sai-naām 'southwest'; tung-pak 'northeast'; sai-pak 'northwest'

seung ch'a seung 'mutual, together, reciprocal'; ch'a 'different, difference, balance, inferior, bad'; seung ch'a 'discrepancy, difference, variation, error'

uēn far, distant, remote, greatly; seung ch'a keí uēn 'quite different'; ch'a tak uēn 'quite different'

Shíp Shí shíp 'to assist, to hold, to attract'; shí 'a clan, a family'; Shíp-Shí 'Centigrade'; Wā-Shí 'Fahrenheit'; a.f.: Shíp-Shí piú, Wā-Shí piú; Shíp-Shí shâp tô '10°C'

tô degree, limit, measure, a rule, a law, place

Wā-Naām Wā 'China'; Wā-Naām 'South China'; Wā-Pak 'North

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 32

China'; Wā-Chung 'Central China'

uě kwai uě 'rain, raining, to rain'; kwai 'season'; uě  
kwai 'rainy season, monsoon'; sei kwai 'four season'; uě leung  
'rainfall'



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 33

ORAL MATERIAL

Hòh Chung-Kaaú: Chung-Kwòk yaũ sei-ts'in keí nín kòm ch'eūng kè lîk-sz̄. Yan-wai tsz̄-ts'ūng shêk hei shī-toi chi-tò uēn-tsz̄ shī-toi, lîk-sz̄ to mǒ t'uēn-kwòh. Chí-hai in-kaú Chung-Kwòk kè lîk-sz̄ tsaũ iù hó noi kè shī-kaàn.

Chung-Kwòk yaũ hó toh shīng shui kè shī-toi. Ngòh-tei p'ó-t'ung kiù k'ui tsô ch'iu. Tsz̄-ts'ūng yat-kaú-i-lük chi yat-kaú-i-paät nín kè Pak-Fât, kaäk-ming shīng-kung, t'ui-tó Ts'ing Ch'iu, shīng-laap Mān-Kwòk. Hai Chung-Kwòk keí ts'in nín loi yaũ kwan-chué ching-t'ai koi wai tsô mán-chué kung-wòh ching-t'ai kè tai-yat ts'è.

Tsz̄-ts'ūng Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk shīng-laap chi hau, Chung-Kwòk kè Kwòk-Mān Tóng i tóng tsz̄ kwòk. Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Mān Ching-Foó hai foó-chaäk Kwòk-Mān Tóng tsz̄ kwòk. In-tsoi Kwòk-Mān Ching-Foó hai T'oi-Waan.

Tsz̄-ts'ūng Kung-Ch'aan Tóng chim-ling Chung-Kwòk taaí-lük chi hau, Kung-Ch'aan Tóng shīng-laap Yān-Mān Ching-Foó.

Paāk Shiu-Kaaú: Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Mān Ching-Foó yaũ keí toh kòh Uēn\* à?

H: Yaũ nḡ kòh. Kiù tsô Haāng-Ching Uēn\*, Laap-Faät Uēn\*, Sz-Faät Uēn\*, Haaú-Shi Uēn\*, Kaam-Ch'aat Uēn\*. M-t'ūng Meí-Kwòk. Ngòh-tei yaũ saam-kòh Uēn\*.

Cheung Sheūng-Wai: Meí-Kwòk Tsung-T'ung kè yām k'eī hai sei nín. Chung-Kwòk Tsung-T'ung ne?

H: Chung-Kwòk kè Tsung-T'ung lük nín yat yām. Lín suén lín yām yat ts'è.

C: M-koi, m-koi.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 33

Lt Colonel Hōh: China has over 4000 years of history. It's history can be traced in an unbroken line from the Stone Age to the Atomic Age. The study of Chinese history alone will take a considerable length of time.

There were many falls and rises in Chinese history. We usually call them dynasties. Since the Northern Expedition in 1926-28 and the revolution which succeeded in overthrowing the Ching Dynasty, a republic was established. For the first time in several thousand years, China had a democratic government instead of a monarchical form of government. Since the founding of the Republic of China, the Chinese government structure has been the Party Rule established by the Kuomintang, and the Chinese National Government has been and still is responsible to the Party. The National Government is presently in Taiwan. After the Communists took over the Chinese mainland, they established the Chinese People's Government.

Major White: Sir, how many branches of the Government are there in the Chinese National Government?

H: Five, namely: the Executive Yuan, the Legislative Yuan, the Judicial Yuan, the Examination Yuan and the Control Yuan. It is different from the United States. We have three.

Capt Cheung: A term for the Presidency in the United States is four years. How long is it for a President in China?

H: Six years. He can be re-elected for one more term.

C: Thank you, sir.

何中校： 因，代，國，既。 普一推千和。 既政府政。 史時中。 我六功國主。 中國國民政。 歷子究。 二成中民。 國現在。 既原研。 代九命係做。 後，國。 大陸之。 長到係間時一革。 為。 之。 中國。 府多。 個。 院。 院。 咁至祇時既從，國改。 立。 國。 中政。 幾。 個。 院。 察。 院。 年。 代。 既衰自伐民體。 成。 國。 治。 領。 民。 有。 院。 監。 期。 幾時過耐盛。 北立政。 次。 國。 治。 黨。 佔。 人。 府。 政。 院。 監。 院。 千器斷好多朝。 既成主。 一。 民。 黨。 民。 黨。 立。 政。 行。 院。 院。 四石有要好做年，君第華以國灣產成民做試三統。 既。 任。 期。 係。 四。 年。 中。 國。 總。 有從都就有佢八朝由。 既中黨責台共黨國。 叫。 考。 有。 總。 統。 ？ 中。 國。 既。 總。 統。 六。 年。 一。 任。 連。 選。 連。 任。 一。 次。 中為歷歷中通九倒年政自國係府自共中國。 個。 院。 我。 美。 統。 呢。 ？ 該。 該。

白少校： 五  
 何： 有  
 張上尉： 我  
 何： 中  
 張： 國  
 何： 該  
 張： 該



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 33

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè lík-sí taaí-yeùk\* yaü keí ch'eüng à?
2. Chung-Kwòk keí shí faát-shaang kaák-míng à?
3. Man-Kwòk shíng-laáp chí haü, Chung-Kwòk í tóng tsí kwòk. Kòh kòh tóng kiú tsò mi-yě à?
4. Meí-Kwòk yaü leüng-kòh taaí tóng, kiú tsò mi-yě à?
5. Meí-Kwòk í-ka yüng mán-chué ching-t'ai yik-waák yüng kwan-chué ching-t'ai à?
6. Kwòk-Mán Ching-Fóo í-ka hai pin shué à?
7. Chung-Kwòk Kung-Ch'aán Tóng hai Chung-Kwòk taaí-lük shíng-laáp ching-fóo, kòh kòh ching-fóo kiú tsò mi-yě à?
8. Kwòk-Mán Ching-Fóo t'üng Yán-Mán Ching-Fóo yaü mi-yě m-t'üng à?
9. Kwòk-Mán Ching-Fóo yaü pin keí kòh Uên\* à?
10. Chung-Kwòk Tsung-T'üng kè yám k'ei hai keí nín à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 33

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lĭk-sz lĭk 'to pass through, to have been through, in order, successive'; lĭk nĭn 'for many years past'; lĭk toĭ 'for many generations past'; lĭk ch'iū 'for many dynasties past'; lĭk-loĭ 'hitherto, from the first'; sz 'history, chronicles, annals'; lĭk-sz 'history'

shĕk hei shĭ-toĭ shĕk 'rock, stone, barren'; AN: kaũ; hei 'a vessel, a utensil, a dish, implements, organ in the body, capacity, ability'; shĕk-hei 'stone ware, stone vessel'; shĭ-toĭ 'age, period, epoch, date of'; shĕk-hei shĭ-toĭ 'Stone Age'

uĕn-tsŷ shĭ-toĭ uĕn 'original, originally'; tsŷ (lit) 'son, posterity, boy, Sir, seeds'; uĕn-tsŷ 'atom, atomic'; uĕn-tsŷ shĭ-toĭ 'Atomic Age'

t'uĕn (tuĕn) to cut off, to interrupt, to break, to sever, to stop; tuĕn 'to decide, to give judgment, certainly, decidedly'; pat tuĕn 'uninterruptedly, unbroken'

shĭng shui shĭng 'rise, flourishing, plenteous, abundant, prosperous, thriving, boom, to hold, to contain, to fill'; shui 'fall, to decline, to decrease, to degenerate, to fail, to decay, weak, fortune declining, withered'; shĭng shui 'rise and fall'

ch'iū a dynasty, the court, to visit (father, elder or superior), to face, fronting, towards; T'ōng-Ch'iū 'Tang Dynasty'; Hōn-Ch'iū 'Han Dynasty'; Ts'ing-Ch'iū 'Manchu Dynasty, Ching Dynasty'

Pak-Fât fât 'to reduce a dependency to order, to chastise rebels (used of a regularly organized attack), to cut down'; fât kwók 'to subject a country'; fât mŭk 'to chop wood'; Pak-Fât 'Northern Expedition'

kaäk-mĭng kaäk 'to remove (position, system), to change'; mĭng 'life, to order, order'; kaäk-mĭng 'revolution'

t'ui-tó t'ui 'to push, to extend, to enlarge, to investigate, to elect, to promote, to praise, to hand over to, to give up, to expel'; tó 'to fall over, to lie down, to knock down, to turn upside down'; t'ui-tó 'to overthrow', a.f.: t'ui-faan

shĭng-laâp to establish, to found, to form, to erect

kwan-chué chĭng-t'ai kwan 'a sovereign, a ruler, a state chief, a gentleman, Sir'; chué 'boss, host, master, main, to take over, to rule'; kwan-chué 'a monarch'; chĭng 'government affairs, administration, laws, politics'; chĭng-tsŷ 'politics'; chĭng-t'ai

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 33

'system of government'; kwan-chuê ching-t'ai 'autocratic monarchy, monarchical form of government'

Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk Chung abbr. of Chung-Kwòk 'China', center, central, among, amidst, in between, in'; Wā abbr. of Chung-Wā 'China'; Mān-Kwòk 'republic'; Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk 'Republic of China' (abbr.: Mān-Kwòk)

koi to change, to correct, to alter, to reform, to repent;  
koi k'eī 'to change the date'; koi-leung 'to improve'; koi-pin  
'to change'; koi wai 'to change to, to alter to'

wai to be, to do, to make, to practice, to act out, to cause;  
wai yān 'to be a man, as a person, a man's character'; shòh wai  
'what is done'; wai 'for, because of, on account of, by, to, wherefore'

mān-chuê kung-wòh ching-t'ai mān 'people'; mān-chuê  
'democracy, democratic'; kung 'all, the whole, mutual, collectively, to share, to work together'; wòh 'peace, peaceful, together with, to mix'; kung-wòh 'united in purpose, republican'; kung-wòh ching-t'ai  
'republican form of government'; mān-chuê ching-t'ai 'democratic form of government';  
mān-chuê kung-wòh ching-t'ai 'democratic form of government'

Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk Republic of China

Kwòk-Mān Tóng kwòk-mān 'countryman, citizen'; Tóng  
'political party'; tóng uēn 'party member'; ching tóng 'political party';  
Kung-Wòh Tóng 'Republican Party'; Mān-Chuê Tóng 'Democratic Party';  
Kung-Ch'aán Tóng 'Communist, Communist Party'; Kwòk-Mān Tóng  
'Kuomingtang'

ĩ to use, by, with, through, to use, because, on account of, so as to, in order to, according to, to regard as, to think, to consider, to have, to do, until, when, where, although, and, or

tsz to rule, to govern, to direct, to regulate, to put in order, to cure, to heal, peaceful, the peace under good government;  
ĩ tóng tsz kwòk 'party rule, to rule a country by a political party'

Kwòk-Mān Ching-Foó ching-foó 'government'; Kwòk-Mān Ching-Foó  
'Chinese National Government'

foô-chaak foô 'to be responsible, to burden'; chaak responsibility, duty, to scold'; foô-chaak 'to be responsible'

Kûng-Ch'áan Tóng ch'áan 'property, deeds'; Kûng-Ch'áan Tóng 'Communist Party, Communist'; abbr.: Kûng; Chung-Kwók Kûng-Ch'áan Tóng 'Chinese Communist, Chinese Communist Party', abbr: Chung Kûng

chím-lǐng to seize, to capture, to occupy; abbr.: chím

Yān-Mān Chǐng-Foó Yān-Mān 'people of a country'; Yān-Mān Chǐng-Foó 'People's Government'

Uên\* branches of a government (Yuan), a courtyard, a hall, a college, a public building, abbr: of a hospital

Haāng-Chǐng Uên\* haāng-chǐng 'administration'; Haāng-Chǐng Uên\* 'Executive Yuan'

Laāp-Faāt Uên\* faāt 'law, method, ways and means'; laāp faāt 'to make law'; Laāp-Faāt Uên\* 'Legislative Yuan'

Sz-Faāt Uên\* sz 'to control, to execute, to preside over'; sz faāt 'to enforce the law, to apply the law to'; Sz-Faāt Uên\* 'Judicial Yuan'

Kaam-Ch'áat Uên\* kaam 'to watch, to put under surveillance'; kaam-ch'áat 'to control, inspection'; Kaam-Ch'áat Uên\* 'Control Yuan'

Tsúng-T'úng tsúng 'united into one, altogether, whole, all total, general'; Tsúng-T'úng 'President of a nation, Chief Executive of a Nation'

yām k'ei yām 'an official position, an office, to employ, to put in office, to allow, to tolerate, to bear, to be responsible for, burdens, responsibility, surname'; k'ei 'term (period), period, to hope'; yām k'ei 'term of office'

līn suén līn 'to continue, to join, to connect, consecutive, even, and, together with, including, Company of soldiers'; suén 'to elect, to select, to choose'; līn suén 're-elected'; līn yām 're-appointment to office, to continue in office for another term'

Haaú-Shì Uên\* haaú 'to examine, to test'; haaú-shì 'to examine, to test, examination'; Haaú-Shì Uên\* 'Examination Yuan'



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Chung-Kwòk Kwòk-Man Ching-Foó tsui ko kè  
haang-ching kei-kwaan hai mi-yě à?

Hoh Chung-Kaaü: Hai Haang-Ching Uên\*. Taân-hai Haang-Ching  
Uên\* iù tsip-shaü Kwòk-Man Tóng t'üng Tsui Ko Kwòk-Fông Wai-  
Uên Ooi\* kè ming-ling. Haang-Ching Uên\* Uên\*-Cheung yaü hó  
taaí k'uên.

C: Haang-Ching Uên\* chi há yaü kei toh kòh pò t'üng wai-uên  
ooi\* à?

H: Yaü paat-kòh pò t'üng leung-kòh wai-uên-ooi\*. Paat-kòh pò  
hai Noi-Ching Pò, Ngoi-Kaaü pò, Kwòk-Fông Pò, Ts'oi-Ching  
Pò, King-Tsai Pò, Kaaü-Yük Pò, Kaaü-T'ung Pò, Sz-Faät  
Haang-Ching Pò. Leung-kòh wai-uên ooi\* hai Müng Tsông Wai-  
Uên Ooi\*, K'iu Mô Wai-Uên Ooi\*.

C: Laap-Faät Uên\* t'üng Sz-Faät Uên\* chi há yaü mi-yě kei-kwaan  
à?

H: Laap-Faät Uên\* yaü ng-kòh koò-ting wai-uên-ooi\* t'üng ts'at-  
kòh ták-pít wai-uên ooi\*. Sz-Faät Uên\* yaü Tsui Ko Faät-  
Uên\*, Haang-Ching Faät-Uên\*, t'üng yat-kòh wai-uên ooi\*.

C: Haaü-Shi Uên\* t'üng Kaam-Ch'aät Uên\* yaü tím à?

H: Haaü-Shi Uên\* foò-chaäk paân-lei ts'uên kwòk kung-mô yän-uên  
kè haaü-shi, k'uét-ting kung-mô yän-uên kè tsz-kaäk. Kaam-  
Ch'aät Uên\* tsui chué-iù kè k'uên hai t'aân-hât t'üng shám-  
kai. Yan-wai iù pín-lei kung-tsòk, Kaam-Ch'aät Uên\* tseung  
ts'uên kwòk fan-hoi hó toh kaam-ch'aät k'ui.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

C: Meī-Kwōk mǒ Haaú-Shì Uên\* t'ūng Kaam-Ch'aăt Uên\*. Kóm tím  
à?

Paâk Shiū-Kaaù: Ngǒh-teī yîk yaũ seung tâng kē kei-kwaan tá-  
leī k'uī-teī kē sĶ.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

Capt Cheung: What is the highest executive organ of the Chinese National Government?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The Executive Yuan. However, it takes orders from the Kuomintang and its Political Committee, now the Supreme National Defense Council. The President of the Executive Yuan has considerable power.

C: Under the Executive Yuan, how many ministries and commissions are there?

H: Eight ministries and two commissions. The eight ministries are: Ministry of Interior, Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Ministry of Defense, Ministry of Finance, Ministry of Economic Affairs, Ministry of Education, Ministry of Communication, and Ministry of Justice. The two commissions are: Overseas Chinese Affairs Commission and Mongolian and Tibetan Affairs Commission.

C: What are the organizations under the Legislative Yuan and Judicial Yuan?

H: The Legislative Yuan has five standing committees and seven special committees. The Judicial Yuan is composed of the Supreme Court, the Administrative Court, and one commission.

C: How about the Examination Yuan and Control Yuan?

H: The Examination Yuan is entrusted with the power of conducting civil service examinations and of determining the qualifications for public service. The principal powers

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

of the Control Yuan are impeachment and auditing. In order to facilitate its work, the Control Yuan divides the whole country into a number of supervisory districts.

C: The United States does not have the Examination Branch and Control Branch. Why is that?

Major White: We have their counterparts to take care of their affairs.

張上尉：中國國民政府最高行政機關係  
 何中校：中國野政院。但係行政委員會要接受國  
 張何：行政院之部同，有兩個部，財政部、司  
 何：行政院之部同，有兩個部，財政部、司  
 張何：立法院同，有五個委員會，監察院、司  
 何：立法院同，有五個委員會，監察院、司  
 張何：考試院同，負責辦理公務，監察院、司  
 何：考試院同，負責辦理公務，監察院、司  
 張白少校：美國亦有我事



定公務人員之資格。

監察院為全國最高之監察機關。其最  
主要權力為審計與彈劾各政府官員。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

QUESTIONS

1. Kwòk-Mān Ching-Foó tsui ko kè haāng-ching kei-kwaan hai mi-yě à?
2. Haāng-Ching Uên\* ch'ui-chóh tsip-shaû Tsúng-T'úng kè ming-ling chi ngoi, chung iú tsip-shaû pin leung-kòh kei-kwaan kè ming-ling à?
3. Haāng-Ching Uên\* chi hā yǎu kei toh pô t'ūng wai-uēn ooi\* à?
4. Laāp-Faāt Uên\* foō-chaāk mi-yě à?
5. Tsui Ko Faāt-Uên\* hai hai pin-kòh kei-kwaan chi hā kà?
6. Haaú-Shi Uên\* foō-chaāk mi-yě à?
7. Uē-Kwóh yǎu ti ching-foó kè koon-uēn tsō-tak m-hó, pin-kòh kei-kwaan foō-chaāk t'aān-hât k'ui-tei à?



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kei-kwaan organization, agency, a trap; kei-kwaan ts'eung 'machine gun'; haāng-ching kei-kwaan 'executive organ, executive organization, administrative organization'

tsip-shaū to receive, to take

uě (lit) and, with, by, to, or; a.f.: t'ūng (colloq)

Tsui Kō Kwòk-Fōng Wai-Uēn Ooi\* tsui 'the most, superlative degree'; tsui ko 'supreme, the highest'; fōng 'to defend, to prevent, to prepare'; kwòk-fōng 'national defense'; wai-uēn 'committee member, a deputy, a special commissioner'; ooi\* 'meeting, convention, a society, association, council'; wai-uēn ooi\* 'a committee, a commission of investigation'; Tsui Kō Kwòk-Fōng Wai-Uēn Ooi\* 'Supreme National Defense Council'

chéung officer in charge, commanding officer, senior, old, to grow, to increase, to show respect for age, to excel; Haāng-Ching-Uēn\* Uēn\*-Chéung 'the President of the Executive Yuan'; pô-cheung 'Secretary of a Department, minister'; wai-uēn-chéung 'committee chairman'

k'uēn power, authority, right, jurisdiction; synonym:  
k'uēn lik

pô a Ministry (Department in the U.S.), a board, a section, a division

k'âp and, such as, to reach to, to attain, to extend, to come up to, when, as long as; synonym: uě, t'ūng, tò

Noi-Ching Pô noi 'inner, internal, inside, within, among'; noi-ching 'home administration, domestic administration, internal affairs'; Noi-Ching Pô 'Ministry of Interior'

Ngoi-Kaau Pô ngoi 'outside, external, without, besides'; ngoi-kaau 'foreign relation, foreign affairs, diplomacy'; Ngoi-Kaau Pô 'Ministry of Foreign Affairs'

Kwòk-Fōng Pô Ministry of National Defense

Ts'oi-Ching Pô ts'oi 'treasure, money, wealth, valuables'; ts'oi-ching 'finances, administration of finance'; Ts'oi-Ching Pô 'Ministry of Finance'; abbr. 'Ts'oi Pô'

King-Tsai Pô Ministry of Economic Affairs; abbr.: King Pô

Kaaù-Yûk Pô Ministry of Education; abbr.: Kaaù Pô

Kaau-T'ung Pô Ministry of Communication; abbr.: Kaau Pô

Sz-Faât Haāng-Ching Pô Ministry of Justice Administration

Mūng Tsông Wai-Uēn Ooi\* Mūng 'Mongolia, Mongols, to cover, to conceal, to meet with, untaught child'; Tsông 'Tibet', a.f.: Sai-Tsông; ts'ong 'to conceal, to store up, to hide'; Mūng Tsông 'Mongolia and Tibet'; Mūng Tsông Wai-Uēn Ooi\* 'Mongolian and Tibetan Affairs Commission'

K'iu Mô Wai-Uēn Ooi\* k'iu 'emigrants, to sojourn'; k'iu-mān 'emigrants'; Wā-K'iu 'Chinese emigrants, Chinese overseas'; ngoī k'iu 'foreigners residing in China'; mô 'affairs, duty, business, must, necessary'; k'iu mô 'Overseas Chinese affairs'; K'iu Mô Wai-Uēn Ooi\* 'Overseas Chinese Affairs Commission'

koò-ting koò 'firm, strong, established, assuredly, decidedly, originally, chronic'; ting 'sure, firm, calm, standstill'; koò-ting 'firm, fixed, unchanged, permanent, stationary, steady'

faât-uēn\* law-court; teī-fong faât-uēn\* 'district court'; Tsuī Ko Faât-Uēn\* 'Supreme Court'; Haāng-Ching Faât-Uēn\* 'Administrative Court'

paân-leī paân 'to manage, to do business, to do, to transact, to provide'; leī 'to manage, to mind, to care of, to clean up'; paân-leī 'to undertake, to do, to take care, to be entrusted with'

kung-mô yān-uēn kung 'public, official, office'; kung-mô 'official business'; yān-uēn 'personnel'; kung-mô yān-uēn 'government employees, civil service employees'

tsz-kaak qualification, eligibility

chué-iù chué 'main, principal, primary, foremost, host, master'; chué-iù 'principal, main, primary'

t'aān-hât t'aan 'to snap the fingers, to play on stringed instruments'; t'aan-hât 'to impeach, to accuse, impeachment'

shám-kai shám 'to try (court), to question, to judge'; kai 'to count, to sum up'; shám-kai 'auditing'

pîn-leī pîn 'convenient, handy, side, to facilitate';

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 34

serviceable, sharp (weapons, knife)'; pîn-lei 'convenient, handy, serviceable, to facilitate'

fan-hoi to divide, to split, to screen, to isolate

k'ui a district, a place, a region, small, unimportant;  
k'ui-k'ui 'small, unimportant'

seung táng equal, equivalent, the same, similar, alike

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheûng-Wai: Tsž-tš'üŋ yat-kaú-yat-yat nin chi haû, Chung-Kwòk tím ă?

Hòh Chung-Kaaü: Chung-Kwòk kě mîng-wân haî yaü Kwòk-Mân Tóng tsô shîng kě, Kwòk-Mân Tóng kě chué-î t'üŋ fong-leûk haî Suen-Chung-Shaan tsô shîng kě. Tsž-tš'üŋ k'uî t'ui-faan-chòh Moön-Ts'ing chi haû, ue Kwóng-Chau kin-laâp Wóng-Pò Kwan-Haaü, hoi-ch'í fân-lîn san kwan, kaaü k'uî-teî Saam-Mân-Chué-Î. Yat-kaú-î-nğ nin Suen-Chung-Shaan seî-chòh chi haû, yaü Tseúŋ-Kaaü-Shêk chí-fai kaák-mîng kwan Pak-Fât, siu-mít Pak-Yeüŋ Kwan-Fât, t'üŋ-yat ts'uên kwòk, tseung shaú-to yaü Kwóng-Chau poon tò Naâm-King.

C: Kwòk-Mân Tóng chí-leî Chung-Kwòk kě kei-poón sz-seúŋ haî tím kă?

H: Suen-Chung-Shaan kě chué-tsòk yaü Saam-Mân-Chué-Î, Kin Kwòk Fong-leûk...Ni ti shue tsaü shîng-wai Kwòk-Mân Tóng chí-leî Chung-Kwòk kě kei-poón sz-seúŋ. Suen-Chung-Shaan wâ, uē-kwòh seúŋ Chung-Kwòk k'eüŋ, yat-tîng iü shât-haŋg Saam-Mân-Chué-Î t'üŋ Nğ K'uên Hîn-Faât. Saam-Mân-Chué-Î haî mân-tsûk, mân-k'uên, mân-shaang. Nğ K'uên Hîn-Faât haî haŋg-chîng, laâp-faât, sz-faât, haaú-shî, kaam-ch'aât.

C: Suen Sin-Shaang tseung kin kwòk fan-hoi saam-kòh kaai-tuên. Pin saam-kòh ă?

H: Haî kwan-chîng shî-k'eî, fân-chîng shî-k'eî, hîn-chîng shî-k'eî.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

C: Suen Sin-Shaang hai pin shuê yān à?

H: K'ui hai Kwóng-Tung yān. K'ui yau hó toh yau-tím. Chung-Kwòk lîk-sz wâ, Kwóng-Tung hai Chung-Kwòk kè kaak-ming ch'aak-uên tei.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

Capt Cheung: What took place in China after 1911?

Lt Colonel Hōh: China's destiny was shaped by the Kuomintang, whose principles and policies were formulated by Dr. Sun Yat-sen. After the Manchu regime was overthrown by him, the Whampoa Military Academy was established at Canton to train a cadre as the nucleus of a new army indoctrinated with San Min Chu I or the Three People's Principles. After the death of Dr. Sun in 1925, this new army, under the command of Chiang Kai-shek set out on the Northern Expedition and succeeded in crushing warlordism and unified the country. The National Government originally in Canton was moved to Nanking.

- C: What are the ideological bases of the Kuomintang in governing China?
- H: Dr. Sun's Three People's Principles, the Scheme for the Establishment of the Nation... These form the ideological bases of the Kuomintang. Dr. Sun remarked that in order to make China a strong nation, China must adopt the Three People's Principles and that the Government should be entrusted with the Five Powers. The Three People's Principles are Nationalism, People's Rights and People's Livelihood. The Five Powers are Executive, Legislative, Judicial, Examination, and Control.
- C: Dr. Sun divided the course of national reconstruction into

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

three periods. What are they?

H: The periods are military operation, political tutelage, and constitutional government.

C: Where was Dr. Sun from? Where was he born?

H: He was a Cantonese. He had many advantages. According to Chinese history, Canton has been the starting point of Chinese revolutions.

張上尉： 呀？做，練二石關南  
 何中校： 點嘅山後訓九介軍到  
 自中國成於新五指統京黨山……

張何： 國民中山……  
 張何： 孫中山……  
 張何： 孫先生呀？

何張何： 係孫佢  
 係孫佢  
 係孫佢



國後要山，力主成辦  
 中立重中校勞民就之  
 ，成最孫軍時「三校行  
 後國國父埔同講軍實  
 之民建國黃父演埔與  
 立。而國立國地黃埔想  
 成慨。中建。各與思  
 國分國。東用國略本  
 民可建闊廣之全方基  
 ，不為軍於伐在國之  
 倒是作洋即北及建軍  
 推黨工北，備，建  
 被民之滅此以略義國  
 清國要消及，方主治  
 滿與首為見軍國民黨  
 自運黨題有新「建三民  
 命民間生練作國  
 之國之先訓著義為法

有，逝即，國京  
 段期先生代全南  
 階時先先生北一至  
 之政山蔣始統搬  
 國訓中。開，州  
 建為年責年功廣  
 ，二四頁五成由  
 略第十石十伐都  
 方，國介民北首  
 國期民蔣於而將  
 建時，由，年府  
 之政期業軍三政  
 父軍時大命。民  
 國為政國革上國  
 據一憲建民北年  
 根第為，國州六  
 三後織廣十  
 三第世組由民

廣始  
 於開  
 起州地  
 命廣源  
 革在策  
 國亦之  
 中伐國  
 北建  
 人與與  
 東軍命  
 廣建革  
 為國國  
 生治中  
 先黨為  
 山民東  
 中國廣  
 州所

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

QUESTIONS

1. Kwòk-Mān-Tóng kè chué-î t'ūng fong-leūk haî pin-kòh tsó shīng kà?
2. TsZ-t's'ung t'ui-tó-chóh Moŏn-Ts'ing chi haû, Suen Sin-Shaang haî Kwóng-Tung kìn-laâp yat-kaan mi-yě kwan-haaû à?
3. K'uĩ tím-kaaí iù kìn-laâp Wōng-Pò kwan-haaû à?
4. K'uĩ fàn-lîn san kwan lai tsô mi-yě à?
5. Pin-kòh foô-chaàk chí-fai kaàk-mīng kwan Pak-Fât à?
6. Pak-Fât shīng-kung chi haû, Kwòk-Mān Ching-Foó tseung shaú-to yaū pin shuè poon tò pin shuè à?
7. Kwòk-Mān Tóng chí-leĩ Chung-Kwòk kè kei-poón sz-seúng haî haî pin shuè tak lai ka?
8. Saam-Mān-Chué-î tsik-haî mi-yě à?
9. Suen Sin-Shaang tseung kìn kwòk fan-hoi saam-kòh kaai-tuên. Kòh saam-kòh kaai-tuên haî tím kà?
10. Suen Sin-Shaang haî pin shuè yān à?
11. Lîk-sz sheúng wâ, Chung-Kwòk pin shaáng haî Chung-Kwòk kaàk-mīng ch'aàk-uên teî à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

míng-wân míng 'fate, destiny, the will of God, a command, life, to name, government notification'; wân 'luck, to transport, to convey, movement'; míng-wân 'destiny, fate, horoscope'

Suen-Chung-Shaan Suen 'surname, Sun, grandson, descendant'; Chung-Shaan 'Chungshan of Kwangtung Province'; Suen-Chung-Shaan 'Dr. Sun Yat-sen (the founder of the Republic of China)'

Moön-Ts'ing Moön 'Manchuria, full, satisfied, self-sufficient, the whole of, complete'; Ts'ing 'Ching Dynasty, clear'; Moön-Ts'ing 'Ching Dynasty'

ue in, on, at, by, for, from, than, with reference to, compared with

Kwóng-Chau Canton

Wōng-Pò Kwan-Haaú Wōng-Pò 'Whampao (an area located in the vicinity of Canton city)'; Wōng-Pò Kwan-Haaú 'Whampoa Military Academy'

kín-laâp kín 'to establish, to erect, to found, to reconstruct'; kín-laâp 'to establish, to erect, to found'

hoi-ch'í ch'í 'to begin, first, at the beginning'; hoi-ch'í 'to begin, to start, to be the first, the beginning'

Saam-Mān-Chué-î chué-î 'doctrine, theory, principle'; Kāng-Ch'aân chué-î 'Communism'; Saam-Mān-Chué-î 'San Min Chu I, or Three People's Principles, Dr. Sun Yat-sen's threefold theory of national essentials--nationalism, people's rights and people's livelihood'

Kín Kwòk Fong-Leûk kín kwòk 'establishment of the nation'; fong-leûk 'policy, scheme'; Kín Kwòk Fong-Leûk 'Scheme for the Establishment of the Nation---by Dr. Sun Yat-sen'

Tseúng-Kaál-Shêk Chiang Kai-shek

siu-mít siu 'to diminish'; mít 'to destroy, to annihilate, to remove'; siu-mít 'to destroy, to annihilate, to exterminate, to remove'

kwan-fât warlord; synonym: Pak-Yeūng Kwan-Fât

t'úng-yat to unify, to unite, unification

shaú-to national capitol

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 35

Naām-King Nanking

poon to move, to shift, to remove, to transport, to transfer; a.f.: ts'in (lit)

sz-seúng sz (lit) 'to think, to contemplate, to meditate, to consider'; sz-seúng 'guiding principle, idea, thought'; kei-poón sz-seúng 'basic guiding principle'

chuè-tsòk chuè (lit) 'to do literary work, to write (as a book), famous, prominent'; tsòk 'to write, to work, to do, to make'; chuè-tsòk 'to do literary work, to write (as a book)'

Mān-tsûk tsûk 'a family, a clan, a tribe, a class'; mān-tsûk 'race, nationalism'; Mān-Tsûk Chué-î 'Principle of Nationalism'

mān-k'uēn rights of the people, authority of the people; Mān-K'uēn Chué-î 'Principle of Democracy'

mān-shaang livelihood; Mān-Shaang Chué-î 'Principle of Livelihood'

shât-haāng to put into practice, to carry out, to execute, to take effect

Ng̃ K'uēn Hìn-Faàt hìn-faàt 'constitution'; Ng̃ K'uēn Hìn-Faàt 'quintuple constitution based on the five principles of administrative authority as outlined by Dr. Sun Yat-sen'

kaai-tuēn kaai 'stairs, a flight of steps, a class, a rank or step'; tuēn 'a section, a paragraph, a part'; kaai-tuēn 'period, phase'

kwan-ching military operations, military administration; Kwan-Ching Shī-K'eī 'period of Military Operations'

fàn-ching fàn (lit) 'to instruct, to advise'; Fàn-Ching Shī-K'eī 'Period of Political Tutelage'

hìn-ching hìn (lit) 'constitution'; Hìn-Ching Shī-K'eī 'Period of Constitutional Government'

ch'aāk-uēn teī ch'aāk 'policy, plan, scheme, to initiate, to start, to whip'; uēn 'a source, a spring'; ch'aāk-uēn teī 'starting point, base for initiating a movement'

yau-tim good points, merits

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Hai haang-ching sheung, Chung-Kwok ke k'ui-fan hai tim ka?

Hoh Chung-Kaaü: Chung-Kwok k'ui-fan wai saam-shap-ng-koh shaang, Mung-Koo t'ung Sai-Tsong leung-koh tsz-chi k'ui.

C: Shaang Ching-Foo shi ching ke shi-hai, yung mi-ye lai tsö kan-kui a?

H: Hai i-chiu Suen-Chung-Shaan shoh se ke Kin Kwok Taa-Kong t'ung Chung-Yeung Ching-Foo ke faat-lut t'ung ming-ling lai shi ching.

C: Shaang-Foo Chue-Tsik hai yau Chung-Yeung Ching-Foo wai-yam ke, yik-waak hai yau yan-man suon ka?

H: Shaang-Foo Chue-Tsik hai yau Chung-Yeung Ching-Foo wai-yam ke.

C: Chung-Kwok yau leung-chung shi, tak-pit shi t'ung p'ot-tung shi. Tak-pit shi hai yau pin-koh kei-kwaan koön-hat ka?

H: Hai yau Haang-Ching Uen\* chik-tsip koön-hat ke. Tak-pit shi paa-k'oöt ha-pin kei chung: 1. Kwok to. 2. Yan-hau toh-kwöh yat-paak-maan ke shing-shi. 3. Tsoi ching-chi sheung, king-tsaï sheung, man-fa sheung yau tak-pit chung-iu sing ke. Chung-Kwok yau shap-i-koh uen\*-hat shi, ng-shap-ng-koh shaang-hat shi.

C: Chung-Kwok ke po-kaap chai-to hai tim ka?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

- H: Chī-ue p'ó-kaáp chái-tô, mooí k'oh shí fan wai yeük-kon k'ui.  
K'ui chi hâ yaũ p'ó. P'ó chi hâ yaũ kaáp. Kaáp chi hâ yaũ oô.
- C: Tei-fong tsz-chi k'ê taan-wai\* hai mi-yě a?
- H: Uên hai tei-fong tsz-chi k'ê taan-wai\*. Uên yaũ toh chúng, i  
mîn-tsik, yân-háu, king-tsaí ts'ing-ying, mán-fà, t'ung  
kaau-t'ung kung-kuí i t'ing. Uên chi hâ yaũ heung waák chàn.  
Heung waák chàn chi hâ yaũ p'ó t'ung kaáp.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

Capt Cheung: From the standpoint of administration, how many divisions is China divided into?

Lt Colonel Hōh: China is divided into 35 provinces, Mongolia and Tibet.

C: When each provincial Government administers political affairs, what does it follow?

H: It follows the Fundamentals of National Reconstruction authored by Dr Sun Yat-sen and orders of the Central Government.

C: Is the chairman of the provincial government appointed by the National Government or elected by the people?

H: He is appointed by the Central Government.

C: In China there are two kinds of municipalities, special and ordinary. What organization has control over the special municipalities?

H: They are under the direct control of the Executive Yuan. Special municipalities comprise (1) the national capital, (2) cities that have a population of over 1,000,000, and (3) cities that possess special political, economic and cultural importance. There are twelve special municipalities which are controlled by the Executive Yuan and fifty-five ordinary municipalities which are controlled by the provincial governments.

C: What is the pao-chia system in China?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

- H: The pao-chia system is this: Each municipality is divided into a number of chu (district); each chu is divided into pao (borough); each pao is divided into chia (ward); and each chia is divided into households.
- C: What are the units of local self-government?
- H: Hsien (county) is a unit of local self-government. There are several kinds of hsien, depending on their area, population, economic conditions, cultural status and communication facilities. Under the hsien there are hsiang (in rural areas) or chen (in urban areas), and the hsiang or chen are sub-divided into pao and chia.



張上尉：係點啲？  
 何中校：中國既區分係點啲？  
 張：省政，用乜野黎做根據  
 何：係依照孫中山所寫嘅建國大綱同中央  
 張：省府主席係由人選中，抑或  
 何：省府主席係由人選中，抑或  
 何：係由別行下市政便百上國轄保甲制下戶  
 張：中國既保甲制度係點啲？  
 何：至於保甲制，係每個保  
 張：地方係自治單位，係乜野呀？  
 何：縣有各種，以

面積，人口，經濟情形，文化，  
同交通工具而定。縣之下有鄉或  
鎮，鄉或鎮之下有保甲。

READING MATERIAL

為時分為去分十  
 較亦國分過市有  
 形分全省·每保  
 情區將全市將每  
 治之府將縣·  
 政市政又千度保戶  
 與，央，若制十十  
 形縣中下有甲二三  
 地，，之區保至至  
 多省治理府政行十十  
 人國利省每地區甲  
 大全便在·各每每  
 地以為·區·  
 國所·省政多區甲  
 中·同千行亂千十  
 雜不若千戰若三  
 覆有為若因為至

分可與別叫轄省  
 區國區特又省個  
 之中治，，叫五  
 市，自市轄又十  
 縣言古種直，五一  
 省而蒙兩院轄與之  
 之面，有政管市市  
 國方區國行府轄別  
 中政治中由政府特  
 ，行自，市省個個  
 形由兩二別由二二  
 情·與第特市十十  
 近一省·通有為  
 最第五區市普國州  
 據：十治通·全廣  
 根下三自普市現·  
 如為藏與轄·市  
 約分西市院市轄

六濟·之  
 至經定保  
 種，而·  
 三口形保  
 有人情有  
 縣，通下  
 ·積交之  
 位面與鎮  
 單其，或  
 之以要鄉  
 治類重·  
 自種之鎮  
 方之上或  
 地縣化鄉  
 為·文有……  
 縣多，下甲  
 之形之有  
 種情縣下

## QUESTIONS

1. Hai haang-ching fong-min, Chung-Kwok hoh-i fan wai kei ton shaang t'ung tsz-chi k'ui à?
2. Chung-Yeung Ching-Foo t'ung shaang ching-foo yau mi-yě m-t'ung à?
3. Suen-Chung-Shaan Sin-Shaang sé-choh yat-poón shue, hai kwaan-ue Chung-Yeung Ching-Foo t'ung tei-fong ching-foo ke. Kòh poón shue kiù tsô mi-yě à?
4. Shaang-Foo Chue-Tsik hai yau Kwok-Man Ching-Foo wai-yam ke, yik-waak hai yau yan-man suen ka?
5. Chung-Kwok yau pin leung-chung shi à?
6. Tak-pit shi t'ung p'ó-t'ung shi yau mi-yě m-t'ung à?
7. Kwong-Tung yau yat-koh tak-pit shi, k'ui kiù tsô mi-yě à?
8. Tei-fong tsz-chi ke taan-wai\* hai mi-yě à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

k'ui-fan (lit) to divide, division; synonym: fan, fān wai

tsz-chi k'ui tsz 'self, personal, from, since, private';  
chi 'to govern, to control, to rule, to manage'; tsz-chi 'self-  
 government'; k'ui 'area, district, region'; tsz-chi k'ui 'self-  
 governing district'; Mung-Koó Tsz-Chi K'ui 'Mongolia'; Sai-Tsong  
Tsz-Chi K'ui 'Tibet'

shi ching shi 'to bestow, to grant, to act, to do, to  
 exhibit'; ching 'policy, politics, governing'; shi ching 'to  
 administer political affairs'

i-chiü i (lit) 'to follow, to comply with, to trust to,  
 to depend on, to obey, to be near to, according to'; chiü  
 'according to, to obey'; i-chiü 'according to, to comply with,  
 in obedience to'; synonym: kan-kuí

Kin Kwók Taaí-Kong kong 'general outline, summary,  
 principles, laws, the large rope of a net'; taaí-kong 'an out-  
 line, a summary'; Kin Kwók Taaí-Kong 'Fundamentals of National  
 Reconstructions--by Dr. Sun Yat-sen, Outline of Principles for  
 the Establishment of the Nation, title of a book by Dr. Sun  
 Yatsen'

Chung-Yeung Ching-Foó chung-yeung 'central, center';  
Chung-Yeung Ching-Foó 'Central Government'

faät-lüt lüt 'a law, a rule, uniform, according to rule';  
yat-lüt 'uniform, all'; faät-lüt 'law, laws, statutes'; a.f.:  
faät

Shaáng-Foó Chué-tsik Shaáng-Foó 'Provincial Government';  
 a.f.: Shaáng Ching-Foó; chue-tsik 'chairman'; Shaáng-Foó Chué-  
 Tsik 'Governor, Provincial Governor'; Kwók-Foó Chué-Tsik ..  
 'President of the National Government'

ták-pít shí ták-pít 'special, particularly'; a.f.: ták;  
shí 'city, town, market'; a.f.: shing, shing-shí; ták-pít shí  
 'special municipality'

p'ó-t'ung shí p'ó-t'ung 'common, ordinary, general';  
p'ó-t'ung shí 'ordinary city'

koón-hât koón 'to govern, to care for, to control, to  
 manage'; hât 'to have rule over, to have jurisdiction over';  
koón-hât 'to have rule over, to have jurisdiction over, to  
 govern'; chik-tsip koón-hât 'to have direct control, to have

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

direct jurisdiction over', abbr: chik hât

chik-tsîp chik 'direct, directly, straight, upright';  
chik-tsîp 'direct, directly, first-hand'

kwök to to 'national capitol, metropolis, also'; a.f.:  
sháu-to, king-to, king-shing, king, to

mān-fà mān 'literature, language'; mān yān 'literary man';  
mān-hôk 'literature'; mān-tsî 'characters, writing'; fà 'to  
transform, a change, to influence'; mān-fà 'civilization,  
culture'

chûng-iũ sing chûng-iũ 'important'; sing 'nature,  
disposition, spirit, temper, a property or quality, sex'; chûng-  
iũ sing 'importance'

uên\*-hât shî cities under the direct jurisdiction by  
Executive Yuan; shaang-hât shî 'cities under the jurisdiction  
by the provincial government'

chai-tô chai 'system, regulation, laws, to regulate to  
govern, to restrain, to suppress, to subdue'; chai-tô 'system,  
regulation, rules'

pó-kaáp chai-tô pó 'borough, a pao, to protect, to guard,  
to insure, to guarantee'; kaáp 'ward, a tithing, armour, finger-  
nails, scaly, first, chief'; pó-kaáp 'a tithing'; pó-kaáp chai-  
tô 'system of tithing'

chi-ue regarding, in regard to

yeûk-kon yeûk 'if, as if, as to, supposing'; yeûk-kon  
'a certain amount, so much'

oô a door, a family, household, house; oô ngoi 'outdoor';  
oô noi 'indoor'

tei-fong tsî-chî 'local self-government'

taan-wai\* taan 'single, simple, list'; taan-wai\* 'unit'

uên county, hsien

ts'ing-ying ts'ing 'condition, circumstances, affections,  
feelings, desires'; ts'ing-ying 'condition, circumstances'

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 36

kung-kui<sup>4</sup> kui<sup>4</sup> 'implement, utensil, tool, instrument, to prepare, to write out, all, the whole'; kung-kui<sup>4</sup> 'implement, facility'; kaau-t'ung kung-kui<sup>4</sup> 'communication, facility, means of transportation'

heung hsiang (in rural areas), village, hometown

chân chen (in urban areas), city, town

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Yaũ yān wā, Chung-Kwòk ĩ nūng laāp kwòk.

Ni kui shuēt-wā tím-kaaí à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaü: Chung-Kwòk nūng-mān chím ts'uen kwòk yān-haú  
paāk-fān chi ts'at-shāp-ī. Shóh-ī yaũ yān wā, nūng-īp haí  
Chung-Kwòk king-tsaí kē kei-ch'óh.

C: Chung-Kwòk nūng-īp hóh fan waí ch'uk-múk uě kaang-chūng  
leũng taaí luí. Ch'uk-múk toh-shō haí pin shuē à? Kaang-  
chūng toh-shō haí pin shuē à?

H: Ch'uk-múk toh-shō haí Tung-Pak, Sai-Pak, Sai-Naām kòk teí.  
Kaang-chūng toh tsoí Wā-Pak, Wā-Chung, Wā-Naām kòk teí.

C: Chung-Kwòk nūng-mān toh-shō yūng mi-yě paān-faāt kaang-  
chūng kà?

H: Toh-shō yūng yān-lík t'ūng ch'uk-shaang lai kaang-chūng.

C: Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó koi-shīn nūng-īp kē chué-iú múk-tik  
haí tím kà?

H: Haí kaang-chūng foh-hòk fā, heung-ts'uen kung-īp fā, nūng  
ch'aán-pán sheung-īp fā.

C: Kān nīn loi nūng-īp foh-hòk hó yaũ tsūn-pō. Tím-kaaí à?

H: Yan-waí tak-tó Meí-Kwòk kē king-tsaí oōn-chōh, yaũ Meí-Kwòk  
fān-līn kē keí-shūt yān-ts'oi kē chí-tō, t'ūng ts'z-keí kē  
nō-lík.

C: Pin ti nūng ch'aán-pán kē shī-īm ĩ-king yaũ hó hó kē shīng-  
tsik à?

H: Hó-ts'z maí, māk...



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

C: Tîm-kaaí heung-ts'uen kung-îp fà kòm kán-iù à?

H: Uē-kwóh heung-ts'uen kung-îp fà, kung-îp tsaû m-ooí tsaâp-chung hái shîng-shí shuě. Tsaû hó yŭng-î k'ap-shau ti shîng-uē lō-kung. Kaân-tsip lîng-tò kòk teí kè kung k'aū tak-tó p'ing-hāng.

C: Tui-ue t'ó-teí koí-kaāk, T'oi-Waan Kwòk-Mān Ching-Foó tîm tsô à?

H: Ī-king shât-haāng kaang-ché yaū k'ei t'in kè ching-ch'aāk. Ni ti ching-ch'aāk t'ūng Kūng-Ch'aān Tóng kè kung-shě ching-ch'aāk uēn-ts'uēn m-t'ūng.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

Capt Cheung: It is said that China is an agricultural country.

What does it mean?

Lt Colonel Hoh: 72 per cent of China's population are farmers.

Therefore it is said that agriculture is the foundation of China's economy.

C: China's agriculture may be divided into two main types, namely: grazing on natural grasses and arable farming.

Where are they located?

H: Grazing on natural grasses is found in north eastern, north western and south western areas, whereas arable farming is in North China, Central China and South China.

C: What methods of farming do the Chinese farmers use?

H: Mostly by use of manual labor and domestic animals.

C: What are the main objectives of the Chinese Government in improving the agricultural situation?

H: Scientific farming, industrialization of rural districts, and commercialization of farming products.

C: During the last few years, the science of agriculture has made considerable progress. Why is that?

H: This is due to the American economic aid, the direction of American-trained technicians and the effort put forth by the Chinese themselves.

C: With what agricultural products have good experimental results been achieved?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

H: Rice, wheat...

C: Why is industrialization of rural areas so important?

H: If rural areas are industrialized, it will decentralize industrial enterprises in cities. This will absorb surplus labor, and indirectly balance the demand and supply.

C: What does the National Government in Taiwan do as far as Land Reform is concerned?

H: They have implemented the so-called Land-to-the-Tillers policy which is entirely different from that of the Communist's People Commune Policy.



城市處·就好容易吸收的剩餘勞  
工·間接令到各地嘅供求得倒平  
衡·

張何：對於土地改革，台灣國民政府點做呀？  
：已經實行耕者有其田嘅政策·呢啲政  
策同共產黨嘅公社政策完全唔同·

國工在人基  
 各以以大業  
 美所所地農  
 歐，，國於  
 同優落·建  
 不術學比國  
 國技科相中  
 與學國國以  
 國科各各所  
 ，在方美·  
 礎要東歐業  
 基主·與農  
 之礎立難於  
 國基建面宜  
 立國於方適上  
 立易業，之  
 之業工多礎

問村(四)東工耕商經有  
 之鄉·於勞·品之都  
 關·化中餘(一)產華上  
 有(二)業集剩；農對品  
 業·商業之為·國產  
 農化够工村策(三)美與  
 與學不·農政·及術  
 但科品衡以善化，技  
 ，够產平所改業下業  
 國不農不，業工之農  
 立種·口市農村力在  
 農耕(三)人城之鄉努國  
 以·之·大府·府中·  
 雖(一)化市各政(二)政使步  
 國：業城與現化在·進  
 中多工與海·學·助之  
 亦够村沿多科化援大  
 題不鄉南太種業濟極

改革政  
 業改，  
 農地濟  
 項土經  
 各國對獻  
 之·故貢  
 行功；有  
 實成善極  
 所為改都  
 府最形善  
 政「革」情改  
 國改活之  
 中地生形  
 灣「土」民情  
 台以農政  
 在，，軍  
 策中功與  
 策成治

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

QUESTIONS

Chung-Kwòk kè nūng-mān chīm ts'uēn kwòk yān-haú keí fān chi keí à?

Chung-Kwòk kè nūng-îp hōh-ī fan wai pin leūng taaí luí à?

Ch'uk-mūk toh-shò hai pin shuè à?

Chung-Kwòk kè kaang-chūng hai yūng mi-yě paān-faāt kà?

Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó tui-ue koi-shin nūng-îp kè chué-iù mūk-tik hai tím à?

Hai nūng-îp foh-hōk fong-mīn, pin-kòh kwòk-ka oōn-chōh Chung-Kwòk chí taaí à?

T'ó-teí koi-kaāk kè mūk-tik hai mi-yě à?

Tím-kaai Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó seúng tseung ti heung-ts'uen kung-îp fà à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

îp business, a trade, a profession, property, possession, already; nung-îp 'agriculture'; kung-îp 'industry'; sheung-îp 'commerce, business'; hòk-îp 'schooling'; taaî îp 'the great task--to rule'

kei-ch'òh kei 'basic, fundamental, base, foundation'; kei-ch'òh 'foundation, fundamental'

ch'uk-mûk ch'uk 'to rear, to feed, to cultivate, domestic animal'; ka-ch'uk 'domestic animals'; mûk 'to tend as a shepherd, to shepherd'; ch'uk-mûk 'to rear domestic animal, animal husbandry'

kaang-chùng kaang 'to plough, to till'; kaang t'în 'to plough the fields'; chùng 'to plant'; kaang-chùng 'to plough, to till'

ch'uk-shaang domestic animals; a.f.: ch'uk

koî-shîn koî 'to change, to alter, to transform'; shîn 'good, virtuous, apt, expert, familiar with, to perfect, to make good'; shîn yân 'good man'; shîn ue 'good at'; koî-shîn 'to improve, to perfect, to better'

mûk-tik purpose, objective

foh-hòk fâ foh-hòk 'science'; fâ 'to change, to transform, to modify, -ize, -fic'; foh-hòk fâ 'scientific'; kung-îp fâ 'industrialized'; sheung-îp fâ 'commercialized'; Mei-Kwòk fâ 'Americanized'

heung-ts'uen heung 'country place, village, hometown'; ts'uen 'village, hamlet', AN: t'iu; heung-ts'uen 'country, village'

nūng ch'aân-pân ch'aân 'to produce, to yield, to manufacture, property'; ch'aân-pân 'product, production'; nūng ch'aân-pân 'agricultural product, farm product'

tsùn-pô tsùn 'to advance, to proceed, to enter'; pô 'steps, pace'; tsùn-pô 'progress, to make progress'

oôn-chôh oôn (uēn) 'to assist, to rescue, to aid, to help, to take hold of'; chôh 'to assist, to help'; oôn-chôh (uēn-chôh) 'to aid, to help, to assist'; king-chai oôn-chôh 'economic aid'; kwan-sz oôn-chôh 'military aid'



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

yān-ts'oi ts'oi 'ability, talent, power, genius'; yān-ts'oi 'talents, man of ability'; kei-shūt yān-ts'oi 'technicians'

chī-tō chī 'finger, to point to, to guide, to direct'; tō 'to guide, to lead to, to direct'; chī-tō 'to guide, to lead, to direct'

shī-îm îm 'to examine, to inspect, to test'; shī-îm 'experiment, trial, to try out, to test, ordeal'

maī rice (uncooked)

māk wheat, surname

tsaâp-chung tsaâp 'to collect, to gather, to assemble'; tsaâp-chung 'to concentrate'; tsaâp-chung ying 'concentration camp'

k'ap-shau k'ap 'to attract, to inhale, to absorb'; shau 'to receive, to gather, to bring to a close, to harvest, to store away'; k'ap-shau 'to absorb, to inhale, to suck like a leach'

shing-uē shing 'to remain over, left overs, surplus'; uē 'surplus, excess, remainder, a balance, complement of a number'; shâp uē 'ten odd'; shing-uē 'surplus, what is left over, balance'

lō-kung lō 'to toil, to suffer, to give trouble to, weary'; kung 'labor, laborer, work'; lō-kung 'labor, laborers, workers'

kaân-tsip indirect, indirectly

kung k'aū kung 'to supply, supply, to furnish, for'; k'aū 'to demand, demand, to beg, to request'; kung k'aū 'demand and supply'

p'ing-hāng evenly balanced, to balance, to offset, equilibrium

t'ó-tei koi-kaāk t'ó 'earth, soil, land'; tei 'land, floor, ground, lot'; t'ó-tei 'land, soil, territory'; koi-kaāk 'to reform (system, political)'; t'ó-tei koi-kaāk 'land reform, agrarian reform'

kaang-ché yāu k'eī t'in kaang-ché 'those who till'; t'in 'rice field, field'; kaang-ché yāu k'eī t'in 'land-to-the-tillers'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 37

ch'ing-ch'aāk    ch'aāk 'policy, scheme, plan, to initiate';  
ch'ing-ch'aāk 'policy, plan, scheme'

kung-shě    shě 'tutelary, association'; kung-shě 'Commune  
(a Communist system)'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 38

ORAL MATERIAL

- Paāk Shiū-Kaaü: Chung-Kwòk kung-îp hók fan wai kung-yíng uē mán-yíng leüng-luî. Kung-yíng sî-îp, yaü shün shúk kwòk-yíng, yaü kwòk shaáng hóp yíng. Kwòh-hui tai-shúk ue King-Tsai Pô Tsz-Uên Wai-Uên Ooi. Yaü koi ooi\* kaam-tuk koón-leí. Kung-yíng sî-îp tsui chue-iü kē hai mi-yě ä?
- Höh Chung-Kaaü: Hai tân-lîk kung-îp, kóng-t'it kung-îp, kei-haaî kung-îp, lîn t'óng kung-îp, tân hei kung-îp, fà-hòk kung-îp.
- P: Mán-yíng kung-îp tsui chue-iü kē hai mi-yě ä?
- H: Hai kóng-t'it kung-îp, kei-haaî kung-îp, fà-hòk kung-îp, shík-pán kung-îp, fóng-chik kung-îp, yât-yüng-pán kung-îp.
- P: Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó seúng faät-chín kung-îp, taân-hai ts'oi-lîk m-kaü. Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó tím paân ä?
- H: Ching-foó koó-lai wa-K'iu uē ngoi-yán t'aü tsz. Hei-mông hók-i tsz-k'ap tsz-tsuk, wán-koò king-tsai kei-ch'òh.
- P: Kung-îp hóp-tsók kē yám-mô hai mi-yě ä?
- H: Hai tsz-chòh siú kung-îp ch'ut-ch'aán kwan-yüng uē mán-yüng kē yât-sheüng yüng-pán. Lîng siú kung-îp faät-chín chi ts'uên kwòk, uē on-tíng king-tsai.
- P: Tím-kaaî Chung-Kwòk kē ch'üng kung-îp t'üng hing kung-îp to mei-ts'ang faät-taât ä?
- H: Yan-wai k'uét-fát foh-hòk yán-ts'oi uē kei-shút yán-uên.
- P: Chung-Kwòk kē kung-ooi\* tsó-chik m-hai kei kîn-ts'uên. Ching-foó tui ti lō-kung tím-yeüng\* ä?
- H: Ching-foó tui k'ui-tei kē fuk-lei i-king hó chue-i. Koó-lai k'ui-tei tsó-chik kung-ooi\*.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 38

Major White: China's industries may be divided into two types, namely the state-owned and the private-owned industries. Among the state-owned industries, there are some exclusively owned by the state, and some by the state and the province. In the past, these were placed in hands of the National Resources Commission, Ministry of Economic Affairs. What are the main state-owned industries, sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: They are electric power, metallurgy, machinery, sugar refining, electrical manufacturing, and chemical industry.

W: What are the main private-owned industries?

H: They are iron and steel, machine making, chemical, food, textile, and daily necessities.

W: The Chinese Government plans to develop industries, however, it lacks money. What does the Government do in this respect?

H: The Government encourages overseas Chinese and foreigners to invest money in these industries in the hope that these will become self-supporting and in order that the economy may become stabilized.

W: What is the mission of Chinese Industrial Cooperatives, sir?

H: To assist the small industries to produce daily necessities for both military and non-military uses, to scatter small

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 38

industries throughout the country, and to stabilize economy.

W: Why is it that both heavy and light industries have not been well developed in China?

I: Because of the lack of scientific and technical personnel.

H: Labor in China is not well organized. What does the Government do for the laborers?

H: The Government is concerned with their welfare, and organization of labor unions are encouraged.



何：政府對佢地嘅福利已經好注意，鼓勵  
佢地組織工會。

READING MATERIAL

組織亦業，組達農強，政治發業國。政之工想業，在上以如工除學所，展，科，國發，盛在達立要，強其發農時以，學以同所外科國，之全因中外國健，業各度一達農美制之發展歐育因於發及為主易要及為亦除

以業，所工小，基礎發展，業先工，工以重，乏可而，缺只，現業，後，工，落易輕，學不至，科業而，國中重工，展小，發由

中一發，與及，業定要，業工安重，工手之樣，重為生同，為業民業，業工家工，工之國重，之關求與，關有為業，有最，工，最題業輕，防問工或，國生輕業，與民之工，之份手，國部展

於大，不，中于業者，集若工足，多及手自，業省為給，工各者自，鐵海達以，鋼沿發可，如於最但，中，業集大地，工多不各，重業模國，之工規全，國輕其於，中，但散，東城多多

所展而助，發單資，業行簡為，工實一務，展在為任，發，作要，為資合主，投業之，够華工合，不在，工，力入中，財外劃法，府與計辦，政僑項之，國華各行，中勵之實，鼓業於，以工易



小工業，使其出產一部份軍用品與民生日  
用品，令小工業可以自給自足，發展於全  
國。

## QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè kung-îp hók-í fan-hoi pin leŭng taaí luí à?
2. Kung-Yíng s̄-îp tsui chué-iù kè haí mi-yě kung-îp à?
3. Mán-yíng kung-îp tsui chué-iù kè haí mi-yě kung-îp à?
4. Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó seúng faät-chín kung-îp. Tím-kaaí iù koó-lai wā-k'íu t'ūng ngoi-yān t'aū tsz à?
5. Kung-îp hôp-tsòk kè yām-mö haí mi-yě à?
6. Uē-kwóh siú kung-îp faät-chín-tò ts'uēn kwòk kòk teí, Chung-Kwòk kè king-tsai ts'ing-yíng tím à?
7. Tím-kaaí Chung-Kwòk kè ch'ŭng kung-îp t'ūng hing kung-îp to m̄-faät-taät à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 38

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Kung-yīng kung 'government, public, official'; yīng 'trade, business, management, to manage, to found, to build, to plan'; kung-yīng 'state-owned'; kung-yīng s̄-īp 'state-owned industries, state-owned enterprises'

mān-yīng private-owned; mān-yīng s̄-īp 'private-owned industries, private-owned enterprises'

shūn pure, purely, unmixed

taī-shūk taī 'to belong to, to be under the jurisdiction'; shūk 'to belong to, connected with, related'; shūk-ue 'to belong to'; taī-shūk 'to belong to, under the jurisdiction'

hōp to join, to pair, to shut, to enclose, to close, to agree, to total, side by side, joined

tsz-uēn wai-uēn ooi\* tsz 'wealth, treasure, money, fees, property'; tsz-uēn 'resource, raw material, commodity'; tsz chōh 'to finance, to subsidize'; tsz-uēn wai-uēn ooi\* 'National Resources Commission', abbr.: tsz-uēn ooi\*, tsz wai ooi\*

koi the said, the respective, that, the, to belong to, ought, should, fated to be, what is proper, to owe

kaam-tuk tuk 'to supervise, to guide, to direct'; kaam-tuk 'to supervise, supervision'

koón-leī to manage, to take care, to handle, management, handling

kōng-t'it kung-īp kōng 'steel'; t'it 'iron'; kōng-t'it 'steel'; kōng-t'it kung-īp 'metallurgy, steel industry'

kei-haaī kung-īp kei 'machine'; kei-haaī 'machine, mechanical, stubborn, monotonous, dull'; kei-haaī kung-īp 'machinery, mechanical industry'

līn t'ōng kung-īp līn 'to refine, to smelt, to purify, to discipline'; līn t'ōng 'sugar refinery'; līn t'ōng kung-īp 'sugar refinery industry'

tīn heī kung-īp tīn 'electricity'; tīn heī 'electric applicances'; tīn-līk 'electric power'; tīn heī kung-īp 'electrical manufacturing, electric industry'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 38

fā-hōk kung-îp fā-hōk 'chemistry, chemical'; fā-hōk kung-îp 'chemical industry'

shîk-pán kung-îp shîk-pán 'food, provisions'; shîk-pán kung-îp 'food industry'

fóng-chik kung-îp chik 'to knit, to weave, to plait'; fóng-chik 'to spin and weave, textile'; fóng-chik kung-îp 'textile industry'

faät-chîn to develop, to expand, to extend, to explore, development, expansion

koó-laî to encourage

t'aū tsz t'aū 'to throw at or into, to jump into, to cast (as a vote), to join, to hand over to'; t'aū tsz 'to invest, investment'

tsẑ k'ap tsẑ tsuk . tsẑ 'self, self'; k'ap 'to give to, to provide, to grant, to issue, by'; tsẑ k'ap 'self-supply, self-supported'; tsuk 'sufficient, enough, to satisfy, foot'; tsẑ tsuk 'self-sufficient'; tsẑ k'ap tsẑ tsuk 'self-supported'

wán-koò wán 'stable, secured, steady, firm'; koò 'stable, firm, strong'; wán-koò 'stable, firm, strong, to stabilize'

hōp-tsòk to cooperate, cooperation, cooperative; kung-îp hōp-tsòk 'industrial cooperative'

ch'ut-ch'aán ch'aán 'to produce, to yield'; ch'ut-ch'aán 'to produce, production'

on-tîng on 'peaceful, quiet, tranquillity, peace'; tîng 'stable, to stabilize'; on-tîng 'stable, stability, security, peace'

ch'üŋg kung-îp ch'üŋg 'heavy'; ch'üŋg kung-îp 'heavy industry'

hing kung-îp hing (heng) 'light, frivolous, unimportant, worthless, to treat lightly, disrespect, reckless'; hing kung-îp 'light industry'

mei-ts'ang not yet

faät-taät developed, prosperous, thriving, flourishing

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 38

k'üet-fât k'üet 'to lack, defective, short of, broken, maimed, absent'; fât 'deficiency, deficit, lacking of, insufficient, to be in want, exhausted'; k'üet-fât 'to be in want, exhausted, insufficient, deficit, run short of'

kung ooî\* labor union; a.f.: lô-kung ooî\*

fuk-leî fuk 'blessing, happiness, good fortune, prosperity'; leî 'convenient, advantage, profit, benefit, to facilitate'; fuk-leî 'welfare, happiness and profit'

chuê-i to give attention to, to pay attention to, to watch

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 39

ORAL MATERIAL

Paāk Shiū-Kaaü: Chung-Kwòk kwòk k'ing chi noi, shòh yaü k'è k'òng-mât tsz-uên to hai kwòk-yaü k'è. Uē-kwòh yān-mān seúng ts'oi k'òng, k'ui-tei iu tím tsô á?

Hòh Chung-Kaaü: Ch'ui-fei yaü ching-foó k'è hui-hóh ts'oi k'òng k'uên, ching-foó m-chún yām-hòh yān hoi k'òng. Uē-kwòh yān-mān seúng ts'oi k'òng, iù heúng ching-foó shan-ts'ing.

P: Uē-kwòh ngoi-kwòk-yān seúng t'aü tsz hoi k'òng, iù yaü mi-yé t'iu-kín\* á?

H: Iù King-Tsai Pô king Haāng-Ching Uên\* hui-hóh, t'ūng-shī iù yaü hā-lit kòk t'iu-kín\*. 1. Chung-Kwòk tsz-poón chīm yat-poón ĩ sheūng. 2. Kung-sz k'è Chung-Kwòk kwòk-tsik k'è túng-sz yān shò chīm yat-poón ĩ sheūng. 3. Kung-sz k'è túng-sz-cheúng t'ūng king-lei iù hai Chung-Kwòk kwòk-tsik k'è yān.

P: Chung-Kwòk k'è k'òng ch'aán ĩ mi-yé wai taaí-tsung á?

H: ĩ mooí, shék-yaü, kam, ngān, t'it, sèk, t'ūng, oo wai taaí-tsung.

P: Mooí t'ūng t'it k'è ts'òng leúng taaí-yeük\* yaü kei-toh á?

H: Kui hóh-k'aaü chi koó-kai, mooí yeük yaü i-ts'in-sei-paák-mān-mān tun. Taān-hai chūng mei yaü k'òk-shat shò-tsž. T'it chi ts'òng leúng yik k'ik wai fung-foó. Ts'oi k'òng k'è shī-haü, toh-shò yūng kau shik paān-faät, yaü-shī yūng san-shik paān-faät.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 39

Major White: All mineral resources within the boundary of China belong to the state. If the citizens wish to prospect or exploit any mineral, what do they have to do, sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: Unless mining rights are granted by the government, no prospecting or exploitation of any mineral is allowed. In that case, the citizen will have to apply for the mining rights.

W: Under what conditions can foreigners invest in mining enterprises?

H: They must be approved by the Executive Yuan through the Ministry of Economic Affairs, subject to the following conditions. (1) The Chinese capital of the company shall be more than half of the total. (2) More than half of the directors of the company shall be Chinese citizens. (3) The chairman of the board of directors and the manager of the company shall be Chinese citizens.

W: What are the chief mineral productions in China?

H: Coal, petroleum, gold, silver, iron, tin, copper, and tungsten.

W: What are the amounts of coal and iron deposits?

H: According to the reliable estimates, the figure of coal deposits is 240,000,000,000 tons, but the actual figure is still unknown. Iron reserve is quite substantial. Most mines are exploited by primitive methods. Very few mines are worked with modern machinery and scientific methods.





該之  
 一 對源  
 第 二 業  
 三 第 工  
 有 練 三  
 件 訓 第  
 本 之  
 基 負 查  
 最 人 調  
 之 術 之  
 業 技 源  
 工 與 資  
 展 才 業  
 發 人 工  
 學 之 發  
 科 國 開

之中，煤東是在少國  
 缺，鐵國物份不中  
 因探，中中礦部亦為  
 但開銅，於之大量亦  
 量，多產要，產錫  
 富大銀最多重礦之  
 豐以，為煤為鐵錫一  
 為難金煤，較之，之  
 極，，以位，要地國  
 量負油其四外重各錫  
 藏人石尤第之國南產  
 之術，，界煤中西要  
 物技煤宗世除，重  
 礦與以大全，錫北界產  
 國才物為佔北，華世礦  
 中人鑛錫量華錫，為要  
 學之，產及，北國重  
 科 國 錫 之 北 鐵 東 我 之

於礦，  
 屬採件，  
 物請條  
 礦申干  
 之府若  
 內政有  
 境向要  
 國要，  
 律，採可  
 法採資之  
 之開投院  
 國想想政  
 中民如行  
 據人人得  
 根，外要  
 家，時  
 國 權 同

不 量 產 以 所 法 新 舊 用 場 多 礦 採 不 工 有 礦 已 現 中 但

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 39

QUESTIONS

1. Uē-kwóh neī hái Chung-Kwòk yān, neī séung hái Chung-Kwòk hoi k'òng, neī iù tím tsò à?
2. Uē-kwóh neī m-hái Chung-Kwòk yān, neī séung hái Chung-Kwòk ts'oi k'òng, neī iù tak-tó pin-kòh kei-kwaan kè hui-hòh à?
3. Uē ngoi-kwòk yān séung hái Chung-Kwòk hoi k'òng, k'uī-teī iù yaū ti mi-yě t'iu-kín\* à?
4. Chung-Kwòk kè k'òng ch'aán, pin keī chúng chì toh à?
5. Meī-Kwòk kè k'òng ch'aán, pin keī chúng chì toh à?
6. Oo yaū mi-yě yūng à?
7. Ngòh-teī shái ch'e kè tân-yaū, hái yaū pin chúng k'òng-mât lai ká?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 39

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kwòk k'ing k'ing 'a boundary, a frontier, a region, a state, a position'; kwòk k'ing 'within the boundary of a country, border of a country'

k'òng ore of metals, a mine; k'òng-mât 'minerals'; k'òng ch'aán 'mineral production, ore production'; k'òng kung 'a miner, miners'; k'òng ts'eūng 'mining areas'; hoi k'òng 'to open a mine'; ts'oi k'òng 'to open a mine, to exploit a mine, to exploit minerals'; ts'oi-k'òng k'uēn 'the right of exploitation of minerals'

ch'uī-fei fei 'wrong, bad, a negative, not, not to be, without'; ch'uī-fei 'with the exception, only if, unless'

huī-hóh hui 'to promise, to allow, surname'; hui-hoh 'approval, to sanction, permission'

chún to grant, to permit, to allow, to authorize

yâm-hōh hōh 'what? why? how? which?'; yâm-hōh 'any'

shan-ts'ing to apply for, to request for

t'iu-kîn\* conditions, terms, articles, sections

king to pass through, to pass by, to go through the channel, to experience, to plan, to arrange

lît to enumerate, to arrange in order, to classify, each one, a file or rank, a series; hâ-lît 'as the following'; lît hâ 'enumerated below, as follows'

tsz-poón capital, funds

túng-sz trustees, directors, managers; túng-sz ooî\* 'board of directors'; túng-sz cheung 'the president of the board of directors'

yān shò number of men

king-leī manager; a.f.: sz-leī

taaī-tsung tsung 'a class, a kind, ancestor'; t'ūng tsung 'having a common ancestor'; taaī-tsung 'goods in bulk'

mooī coal, coal mine

shêk-yaū yaū 'oil'; shêk-yaū 'petroleum'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 39

ngān silver, money, treasures

sêk tin

t'ūng copper; paāk-t'ūng 'bronze'; wōng-t'ūng 'brass'

oo tungsten

ts'ōng leūng ts'ōng 'to store, to hide, to conceal, to hoard'; leūng 'quantity, capacity'; ts'ōng leūng 'the quantity of certain things that are embedded under the ground'

hōh-k'aaù k'aaù 'to depend on, to trust to, to lean on, near to'; hōh-k'aaù 'reliable, dependable, trustworthy'

koó-kai koó 'to estimate, to count, to guess'; kai 'count, to figure out'; koó-kai 'to estimate, estimation'

tun ton, tonage

k'òk-shât k'òk 'true, real, really, reliable, certain, actual, solid'; k'òk-shât 'true, certain, that is certain'

shò-tsê figures, statistics

fung-foò foò 'rich, wealthy, wealth, money'; fung 'abundant, exuberant, rich, plenty'; fung-foò 'rich in content, rich, wealthy, abundant'

kaū shik old style, old fashioned, out of date, obsolete, primitive; san shik 'new style'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

ORAL MATERIAL

- Paāk Shiu-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk tui ngoi maü-yik kè ching-ch'aak  
hai tím kà?
- Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Hai chaang-ts'ui ngoi-ooi t'üng shi-ch'eüng,  
t'iu-ching kung-íp t'üng sheung-íp, koi-shin kaaü-t'ung  
t'üng wân-shue.
- P: Ching-foó tui tsang-ka shaang-ch'aan uë t'iu-ching maü-yik  
shóh ts'oi-ts'ui kè yaü-haaü paân-faät hai tím kà?
- H: Tsoi ch'ut-haü fong-mîn, ching-foó koó-lai tsang-ka ch'ut-  
haü fòh shaang-ch'aan, t'ui-kwóng ngoi-kwòk shi-ch'eüng.  
Tsoi yâp-haü fong-mîn, ching-foó iù yâp-haü fòh hai pit-iù  
mât-tsz, shai ngoi-ooi yung-tak shik-i. Tsê-ts'ung ni chúng  
ching-ch'aak shât-haäng i-loi, tui ngoi maü-yik i yaü kik  
taaî shing-tsaü.
- P: T'oi-waan ch'ut-haü fòh kwòh-chóh Meï-Kam yat-ts'in-maân  
uën i sheüng kè hai mi-yë à?
- H: Hai t'öng t'üng mai.
- P: Tsoi Meï-Kam yat-paäk-maân uën i sheüng kè hai mi-yë à?
- H: Hai tsiu, ch'â-íp, koôn-t'aü.
- P: T'oi-waan yâp-haü fòh kwòh-chóh Meï-Kam yat-ts'in-maân uën  
i sheüng kè hai mi-yë à?
- H: Hai fà-hòk fei-liü\*, nǚ kam, nǚ kam chai-pán.
- P: Tsoi yat-paäk-maân uën i sheüng kè hai mi-yë à?
- H: Hai kei-hei, ling-kîn\*, yeük-pán, mîn-fa, mîn-sha, shuê-  
kaau, yeüng-mò, ngaü-naai, fà-hòk pán...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

- P: Īn-tsoī T'oi-Waan kè chûng-iù kwòk ngoī shī-ch'eūng hai pin  
kei kòh à?
- H: Tsui taaī chi kwòk ngoī shī-ch'eūng wai Yāt-Poón, Heung-Kóng  
taī-ī, Meī-Kwòk taī-saam, Ying pông kwòk-ka taī-sei.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

Major White: What is China's foreign trade policy?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The policy is to control foreign exchange and trade, to readjust industry and commerce, and to improve communications and transportation.

W: What plans has the Government adopted for increasing production and regulating trade?

H: In the export trade, the Government encourages increasing production of goods to be exported and making them more attractive to foreign markets. In the import trade, the Government requires imported goods be necessities in order that foreign exchange may be used appropriately. Since the implementation of this policy, there have been excellent results.

W: What are the goods exported from Taiwan that are over the amount of US \$10,000,000?

H: Sugar and rice.

W: What are those over US \$1,000,000?

H: Bananas, tea, and canned goods.

W: What are the goods imported to Taiwan that are over the amount of US \$10,000,000?

H: Chemical fertilizer, mineral and mineral products.

W: Over US \$1,000,000?

H: Machinery, spare parts, medicine, cotton, cotton yarn, rubber, wool, milk, chemicals...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

W: Which are the important foreign markets?

H: Japan occupies the first place, Hong Kong is the second, America the third, and areas where English pounds are used the fourth.





面少與增增  
 方不政(一) 滙  
 業亦財：易僑  
 工題善下貿取  
 業問改如外爭  
 農之於法對，  
 在上關辦廣國  
 除政之推回  
 財衡效(二) 欵  
 多與平有產滙  
 極濟不為生僑  
 題經政較業華  
 問在財其礦勵  
 之，為，業鼓  
 國外者形工(三)  
 中題要情業滙  
 有最經加加  
 問重濟農外

以蕉...定加入外  
 可香帽一增在使  
 與，草府民，  
 品茶，政人口資  
 產，帽，勵出物  
 其米紙形鼓之要  
 但，情時品必  
 ，糖煤政同產係  
 後如，財，加要  
 落，品與易增定  
 商多藥濟貿及一  
 工極學經外，貨  
 農亦化內對產口  
 雖品，國理生入宜  
 國產品善管之，適  
 中之食改効貨面得  
 口頭想有口方用  
 出罐如要出口滙

經推項最第  
 於為該灣國  
 關一自台美  
 ，之，現，  
 中中場，二  
 網其市効第  
 大，外成港  
 劃項國少香  
 計七取不，  
 政有爭有本，  
 施作量已日四  
 之工大，為第  
 院要，來場家  
 政重易以市國  
 行之貿行外磅  
 在面外實國英  
 方對策之，  
 濟廣政大三

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk tui ngoi maü-yîk kè ching-ch'aak hai tím-yeung\* kà?
2. Tsoi ch'ut-haú fong-mîn, ching-foó kè yaü-haü paân-faät hai tím à?
3. Tsoi yâp-haú fong-mîn, ching-foó seung tím à?
4. T'oi-Waan kè ch'ut-haú fòh, kwòh-chóh Meï-kam yat-ts'in-maân í sheung kè hai pin kei yeung fòh-mât à?
5. Kwòh-chóh Meï-kam yat-paak-maân uen í sheung kè hai mi-yě à?
6. T'oi-Waan kè yâp-haú fòh, kwòh-chóh yat-ts'in-maân Meï-uên kè hai mi-yě à?
7. Ch'ui-chóh fà-hòk fei-liú\*, nǎ kam chi ngoi, T'oi-Waan ching yaü ti mi-yě yâp-haú fòh à?
8. T'oi-Waan t'ung pin kwòk kè maü-yîk tsui toh à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

tui ngoi mañ-yîk yîk 'to exchange, to transact business';  
mañ-yîk 'trade, exchange of goods'; tui ngoi mañ-yîk 'foreign  
 trade, international trade'

chaang-ts'ui chaang 'to strive, to wrangle, to contend,  
 to struggle, to fight, to argue'; ts'ui 'to take, to receive';  
chaang-ts'ui 'to strive for, to struggle for, to fight for'

ngoi-ooi ooi 'to remit, to advance money, waters converg-  
 ing to one spot, whirling waters'; ooi ts'in\* 'to remit money,  
 to remit'; ngoi-ooi 'foreign exchange'; k'iu ooi 'remittance  
 from Overseas Chinese'

shī-ch'eung shī 'market, city'; ch'eung 'ground, field';  
shī-ch'eung 'market, trade'

t'iu-ching t'iu 'to blend, to harmonize, to adjust, to mix,  
 to stir, to provoke, to investigate'; tiū 'to transfer, to change,  
 to move'; t'iu-ching 'to regulate, to adjust, to readjust'

wân-shue wân 'to transport, to ship'; shue 'to transport,  
 to ship, to lose, to be beaten'; wân-shue 'transportation'

tsang-ka tsang 'to add to, to increase'; ka 'to add, to  
 increase, to put in'; tsang-ka 'to increase, to augment, to add  
 to'

shaang-ch'aan production, to give birth to, parturition

ts'oi-ts'ui to adopt, to use, to resort to

yañ-haañ haañ 'effect, effectiveness, function, to offer  
 one's services, to initiate, to follow the example'; yañ-haañ  
 'effective'; yañ-haañ pañ-faät 'effective method'

ch'ut-haú to export, export, exportation, exit

t'ui-kwóng t'ui 'to push, to expel, to deduce'; kwóng  
 'broad, wide, extensive, manifold, versatile, Kwangtung, Kwangsi';  
t'ui-kwóng 'to extend, to broaden, to increase'

yâp-haú to import, import, importation, entrance

pit-iù pit (lit) 'must, will, certainly, necessarily,  
 an emphatic particle'; pit-iù 'must, to have to, necessary,  
 bound to, a necessity, an essential'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 40

mât-tsz goods, merchandize, raw material, commodity; pit-iù mât-tsz 'goods for necessity, daily necessity'

tŝ-t̂'üŋ...ĩ-loi since...; a.f.: tŝ..., tŝ...haũ, tŝ-t̂'üŋ ..ĩ-haũ

Meĩ-Kam Meĩ 'America, the United States'; kam 'gold, dollars, money'; Meĩ-Kam 'the U.S. dollars'

tsiu banana, plantain; a.f.: heung-tsiu; AN: chèk

ch'ā-îp ch'ā 'tea, tea leaves'; îp 'leaves, blade'; ch'ā-îp 'tea, tea leaves'

koòn-t'au\* koòn 'a jug, a pitcher, a can, a bottle, a jar'; koòn-t'au\* 'canned food, canned goods'; koòn-t'au shík-pán 'canned foods'

fei-liû\* fei 'fat, greasy, fertilizer'; liû 'materials, ingredients'; uèn-liû 'raw material'; fei-liû\* 'fertilizer'

chai-pán finished product, product

lîng-kîn\* spare parts, accessories

yeûk-pán yeûk 'medicine, drugs, fire powder'; yeûk-pán 'medicine, drugs'

mîn-fa cotton; abbr: mîn

mîn-sha cotton yarn

shuê-kaau shuê 'a tree (AN: p'oh) to plant'; kaau 'gum, glue, rubber, sticky'; shuê-kaau 'rubber'

yeüŋ-mō yeüŋ 'sheep, goat, ram'; mō 'hair, surname'; yeüŋ-mō 'wool'

ngaũ-naai naai 'milk, breast'; ngaũ-naai 'milk, cow milk'

Ying pông Ying 'England, Great Britain'; pông 'pound, lbs, scale, to weigh'; Ying pông 'English pound, pound sterling'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

ORAL MATERIAL

Paāk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk ĩ-t's'in kè t'ung-sùn t'ūng kaaù-t'ung to hó lôk-haù. Chì-tò Ts'ing Ch'iu moôt-íp t'ūng ĩ-shâp shai-keí ch'oh-íp shí, Chung-Kwòk chì heí-shaú chuè-ì koi-shîn. Ĩn-tsoí Chung-Kwòk kè kaaù-t'ung s'z-hông, yaù pin-kòh kei-kwaan foô-chaàk koón-leĩ à?

Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Yaù Kaaù-T'ung Pô foô-chaàk koón-leĩ. Koi pô fan wai t'it-lô, kung-lô, shuí-wân, hông-hung, yaù-ching, tân-sùn, kóng-ching, heí-tseung paát-kòh pô-moôn.

P: Chì Mân-Kwòk ĩ-shâp nîn kaú-uêt shâp-paát yât Tung-Pak s'z-pin shí, ts'uên Chung-Kwòk kè kwòk-ying, shaáng-ying, mán-ying kè t'it-lô chí pat-kwòh yat-maân-n'g-t's'in kung-leĩ. Shòh king chí teí, chí k'âp ts'uên kwòk mîn-tsik paát-fân chí yat. Yan-wai t'it-lô tsoí kwòk-fōng uẽ kwan-s'z fong-mîn chí chūng-iù s'ng, shòh-ĩ Tseúng Kaaì-shêk ts'ang ts'ó-ĩ yat-kòh t'it-lô kìn-ch'it kè n'g nîn kai-waák. Ni kòh kai-waák kè mûk-tik haí tím kà?

H: K'uĩ kè mûk-tik haí ue n'g nîn noi kìn-chuk hó toh t'it-lô, kìn-laâp yat ts'uên kwòk s'ng chí t'it-lô mōng, tsang-ka kwòk-mân ts'oi-foò, ĩ shik-ying kwòk-fōng uẽ kòk fong-mîn chí sui-iù.

P: Hóh-sik haù-loi ni kòh kai-waák m-shing-kung. Tím-kaaí à?

H: Yan-wai Chung Yât chìn-chaang paaù-faát, kan-chuê haí Tai-ĩ-Ts'z Shai-Kaaì Taaì-Chìn t'ūng noi-chìn, shòh-ĩ ni kòh kai-waák mō paân-faát shât-ĩn.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

P: Yaū Kwóng-Chau chîk t'ung Mòk-Sz-Foh t'ung Au-Chau kè t'it-  
lô, kei shî chuk shing kà?

H: T'eng-mān wā hai Chung-Kūng chīm-lǐng Chung-Kwòk taaí-lūk  
chi haū chuk shing kè.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

Major-White: For centuries in China, communications and transportation have been amazingly backward. It was not until the close of the Manchu Dynasty or at the beginning of the 20th Century that attention was focused on improvement of communications. What organization is now responsible for matters concerning communications?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The Ministry of Communication. There are eight branches of services operated under the Ministry, namely: railway, highways, waterways, civil aviation, postal services, tele-communications, harbor administration, and meteorological services.

W: Up to the time of the Mukden Incident on 18 September 1931, the total length of railways in China, including all government owned, provincial and private-owned, was less than 15,000 kilometers, traversing over or passing through only one eighth of the national territory. In view of the importance of railways to national defense and military operations, Generalissimo Chiang Kai-shek at one time drafted a five-year railway construction plan. What was the objective of this plan?

H: The objective was to construct many railroads within five years. It aimed at the formation of a national railway network designed to enhance the welfare of the people and to meet the need of national defense.



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

W: Unfortunately, this plan did not succeed. What was the reason?

H: The Sino-Japanese War broke out, and World War II and Civil War took place. It was impossible for this plan to be materialized.

W: When was the railroad connecting Canton and Moscow completed?

H: It was said that the railroad was completed after the Communists took over the Chinese mainland.

白少校： 中國到國既理由路電國全路地為性建的目建民需後中界辦法  
 以清至通？通公，十國不只路所既點係一富，呢戰戰實  
 前朝起事，部路港年既過及在全國蔣年？五年性適  
 既末首項，責水，月營萬國防介計，內之應  
 通葉注，管運氣十，五面與石劃，建鐵國  
 訊同意由邊理，航八日營公八事草呢  
 同二改邊，該空個東，里份方擬個  
 交十善個機部，部北民，之面一計  
 通世，機關分郵門事營所一之個劃  
 都好紀現關為政，變既經，重鐵既  
 落葉中責鐵，時，鐵之因要路目  
 後時國管

何中校： 至民 何： 巨既 白： 可 惜 為 因

？世有  
 呀次劃  
 解二計  
 點第個  
 係呢  
 功任以  
 成跟所  
 唔，戰  
 劃發戰  
 計爆內  
 個爭同現  
 呢戰戰實  
 富，一  
 係一富  
 點係一  
 所既點  
 路所既  
 十國不  
 通公，  
 部路港  
 責水，  
 管運氣  
 理，航  
 同二改  
 訊同意  
 通葉注  
 既末首  
 前朝起  
 以清至  
 中國到  
 中至中  
 白少校

白：由廣州直通莫斯科同歐洲嘅鐵路，幾  
時築成嘍？

何：聽聞話係中共佔領中國大陸之後築成  
嘅。

## READING MATERIAL

之教育事業，文化，服務，經濟，對家，府國要，政及重，為建設，業建極，事防展，通國發，交對之；業一事

通用政二通國變所，交多國過交與事路，於其中經空民北鐵，對工，陸人東，府通時後海應八里，政交葉立之適一公一國；末成國以九千之，中利朝國中可年五份，便清民然未十萬八，來不至，雖重二一積，以極通，但國有面，年通始交設，民只國，千交原善建步至路全數，為改力進，鐵及去意極意努力大要國只過注，注之極需全地，大力始年有之，之不人府十已防時經

之計以二法，教育年，第無，教五網及劃，與之路爭計，文化路鐵戰項，文鐵之日該，設性中以，經濟建國因所，擬一全後，防草立要爆，國曾建需繼惜，對石在之相可，路介的面戰為，鐵蔣目方大極，因，其各界，要，應世現，重劃適次實

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

QUESTIONS

1. Tò mi-yě kè shī-haū, Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó chí heí-shaú chuè-  
i koi-shin kaau-t'ung t'ung t'ung-sùn à?
2. In-tsoi Chung-Kwòk kè kaau-t'ung ŝ-hông, yan pin-kòh kei-  
kwaan foô-chaak à?
3. Kaau-T'ung Pô fan-hoi kei toh kòh pô-moôn à?
4. Tân-pò t'ung tân-wâ\*, shúk-ue pin-kòh pô-moôn à?
5. Tseúng-Kaal-Shêk tím-kaaí iù ts'ó-í yat-kòh t'it-lô kìn-  
ch'it kè nǎ nín kai-waak à?
6. Ni kòh kai-waak kè mûk-tik haí tím à?
7. Kìn-shing-chòh ts'uên kwòk t'it-lô mǎng chí haū, tuí kwòk-  
mān t'ung kwòk-fōng tím à?
8. Haū-loi ni kòh kai-waak mǎ paân-faät shât-ín, tím-kaaí à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

t'ung-sùn sùn 'to inquire into, to make judicial questioning, news'; t'ung 'to communicate, to have knowledge, to pass through'; t'ung-sùn 'communication and transportation, correspondence'

lôk-haû backward, underdeveloped

moôt-îp moôt 'the end, finally, insignificant, dust, powders'; îp 'leaf, period'; moôt-îp 'the last years (pertaining to a century and dynasty)'

ch'oh-îp ch'oh 'at first, at the beginning, the first'; ch'oh-îp 'the first years (pertaining to a century and dynasty), the beginning'

t'it-lô mǒng t'it-lô 'railways, railroads'; mǒng 'net, network'; t'it-lô mǒng 'railway network'

kung-lô kung 'public, governmental, official'; kung-lô 'highways'

shuî-wân shuî 'water, sea'; wân 'transportation'; shuî-wân 'waterways, waterway transportation'

hōng-hung hōng 'navigation, voyage, to travel'; hung 'air, Air Force, sky, empty, in vain'; hōng-hung 'aviation'

yaū-ching yaū 'pertaining to post office and mails'; yaū-ching 'postal administration'; yaū-ching kûk 'post office'; yaū-ching kûk cheung 'postmaster'

tîn-sùn tîn 'pertaining to telegram and telephone'; tîn-sùn 'tele-communications'

kóng ching kóng 'harbor, port'; kóng ching 'harbor administrations'

hei-tseung hei 'air, steam, sky, weather, climate'; tseung 'phenomenon, elephant'; hei-tseung 'meteorological services, meteorology'

pô-moôn moôn 'door, profession'; pô-moôn 'branches of services'

sê-pin sê 'affairs, events, matter'; pin 'to change, to transform'; sê-pin 'incident, political incident (as Pearl Harbor incident in 1941)'; a.f.: sê-kîn

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

kwòk-yíng nation-owned, state-owned; shaáng-yíng 'province-owned'; shí-yíng 'city-owned, municipality-owned'; mán-yíng 'private-owned'

chûng-iù shíng shíng 'nature, disposition, quality'; chûng-iù shíng 'importance'

ts'āng ts'āng 'already, past, sign of the past, surname'; a.f.: ts'āng-king 'already, once before, past'

ts'ó-ī ts'ó 'to draft, grass, straw, herbs, careless, hasty, rough'; ī 'to draft, to make a blueprint, to intend, to attempt, to contemplate'; ts'ó-ī 'to draft (plan, statement)'

kin-ch'it kin 'to build, to construct, to establish, to erect'; ch'it 'to build, to establish, to erect, to raise, to set, supposed, for example'; kin-ch'it 'to build, to construct, construction, what has been done'

kin-chuk chuk 'to build, to construct', synonym: kin, kin-ch'it; kin-chuk 'to build, building'

ts'oi-fòò ts'oi 'wealth, treasure, money'; fòò 'wealthy, rich, abundant'; ts'oi-fòò 'wealth, treasure, valuables'

shik-yíng shik 'to suit, suitable, just, then, to reach to'; shik-yíng 'to suit, to meet, to adapt'

sui-iù sui 'to need, ought, to have to, must, it is necessary that..., needful'; pít-sui 'must, required, necessary'; sui-iù 'necessity, need, requirement, ought, required, needful, necessary'

hòh-sik sik 'pity, to love, to take care of, to be sparing of, unfortunately, too bad!'; hòh-sik 'too bad! how sad! pitiable! Alas!'

chín-chaang chín 'war, warfare, battle, combat'; chín-chaang 'war'

paaù-faät paaù 'to explode, to burst, to crack, to crackle, to pop'; paaù-faät 'to break-out, breakout (as war, revolution), to explode by revolution'; taai chín paaù-faät 'the breakout of war'

kan-chuê kan 'to heel, to follow, to accompany, to imitate'; kan-chuê 'following this, there was...'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 41

noî-chîn civil war

shât-în to realize, to materialize, to come true

chîk t'ung chîk 'straight, outspoken, frank'; t'ung 'to pass through'; chîk t'ung 'to reach one place from another place without any obstruction (as railroads, highways)'



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

ORAL MATERIAL

Paāk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk yaũ hai-t'ung kè kung-lô kìn-ch'it hei-shaú-tak shâm-ch'í. Mân-shuèt tai-yat-t'íu hoh-í peí hei-ch'e haäng kè kung-lô hai tsoi yat-kaú-yat-í nín kìn-chuk kè. Tsê ching-foó tsik-kík kìn-ch'it san lô uẽ sau-ching kaú lô chi haú, ín-tsoi kung-lô taaí-yeùk\* yaũ kei ch'eung à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Taaí-yeùk\* yaũ shâp-yat-maân kung-leí. K'ei-chung siú pô-fân hai p'o-hó lô mîn\* kè, taaí pô-fân hai nai lô.

P: Tsoi Chung Yât chin-chaang shí-k'ei chung, kung-lô shing wai kwan-yung uẽ mán-yung kaau-t'ung wân-shue tsui chûng-iù kè kaau-t'ung sìn. Tím-kaaí à?

H: Yan-wai t'it-lô shaú-chóh kík taaí kè p'òh-waaí kè kít-kwóh, tsoi yaũ-ue kìn hei-ch'e lô kaaù t'it-lô wai yung-í uẽ king-tsai, shóh-í kung-lô shing wai kwan-yung uẽ mán-yung kaau-t'ung wân-shue tsui chûng-iù chi kaau-t'ung sìn.

P: Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó kìn-chuk kung-lô, chak-chûng mi-yě à?

H: Chak-chûng ue kìn-chuk san lô, tsíp-pòk kung-lô, uẽ sau-ching kaú lô, lîng-tò kòk shaáng kung-lô lîn-tsip.

P: T'ín Mĩn Kung-Lô yaũ kiù tsô Mĩn-Tĩn Kung-Lô. Ni t'íu mán-meng\* kè kung-lô lîn-tsip Chung-Kwòk t'ung pin kwòk à?

H: K'uí lîn-tsip Chung-Kwòk haú-moôn\* t'ung Mĩn-Tĩn. Ni kòh hai k'ei-tsik.

P: Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó tung uen kei toh yan lai chuk ni t'íu lô à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

- H: Tong-shi Chung-Kwòk tung uên shâp-lûk-maân yân, yûng ch'áan t'ûng ch'òh-t'áu\* hai paât-kòh uêt kè k'ei noi chuk-shing ni t'iu yat-ts'in kung-lei ch'eung kè lô.
- P: Ni t'iu faan shaan uêt lêng yaũ shaan-laãm cheung-hei kè taaí lô, chan-hai yân-luî wai-taaí kè kit-tsing pán là?
- H: Hai là! Chung-Kwòk yân kìn-chuk T'in Mĩn kung-lô uẽ Meĩ-Kwòk yân kìn-chuk Meĩ-Kwòk T'aaí-P'ing Yeung t'it-lô oõ-seung fai-yíng.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

Major White: Systematic construction of highways in China started late. It was said that the first highway for motor traffic was built in 1912. Since the Government speeded up the construction and maintenance of new and old roads, how many kilometers of highways have been constructed in China?

Lt Colonel Hōh: About 11,000 kilometers. Some are surfaced roads, but most of them are earth roads.

W: During the Sino-Japanese War, the highways assumed a leading role in both military and civil transportation. What was the reason?

H: That was because of the heavy losses sustained by the railway, and due to the fact that motor roads can be built more easily and at low cost.

W: What did the Government emphasize in construction of highways?

H: Emphasis has been laid on building, connecting and maintaining lines linking various provinces.

W: The Yunnan-Burma Highway, popularly known as the Burma Road, is connected with which country?

H: It connects China's backdoor and Burma. It is a legend in itself.

W: How many people were mobilized to construct this road?

H: Some 160,000 people were mobilized and set to work, using mostly crude implements such as shovels and spades. The

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

road, measuring 1,000 kilometers, was opened to traffic after eight months of work.

- W: This road which runs through difficult and mountainous country and fever-ridden areas is indeed a great human achievement?
- H: Yes, indeed. The construction of the Burma Road by the Chinese has been compared to the building of the Union Pacific Railway in the United States.



白：呢條翻山越嶺有大山嵐瘴氣嘅大路，真  
係人中國人建大嘅結晶品啦！  
何：係啦！中國人建大嘅結晶品啦！  
建築美國太平洋滇緬公路與美國人  
互相輝映。

## READING MATERIAL

路運火在而雜，意  
 鐵與用以設複路注  
 與具多所建形鐵始  
 路工又·路情靠開  
 公通輸要鐵活只府  
 ，交運需重生，政  
 面上模甚側民善以  
 方陸規不多人改所  
 輸之大路，因具·  
 運國而公中後工要  
 與中，式劃·通需  
 通去始新計設交之  
 交過原於通建，代  
 上·為對交路多時  
 陸要極以上公題應路  
 在重具所陸重問適公  
 樣工，設側通法設  
 同輸車建不交無建

第民大輸  
 在與·運  
 濟軍交通  
 而便公用  
 易為善民  
 容府改與  
 為政以用  
 路，力軍  
 鐵間財為  
 較期與成線  
 路戰力已通  
 公大人路交  
 設界中公之  
 建世集，要  
 次，後重  
 二運戰最

南其華勝建之築  
 西·援之為過建  
 有省國事·經是  
 路各美戰上所真  
 公北為取之，  
 之西路爭路多成  
 名南該國公之完  
 著西·中北力內  
 ，經名於西人間  
 期路著對與負期  
 期·最·南動之  
 爭路為道西所長  
 戰公路要在府不蹟  
 日緬公之獻政在奇  
 中滇緬輸貢，與之  
 在與滇運其路，史  
 北以資，該難路  
 西中物利築艱公

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk tai-yat-t'iu hóh-í peí heí-ch'e haāng kè kung-lô hái keí shí kìn-chuk ká?
2. Īn-tsoí Chung-Kwòk kè kung-lô taaí-yeük\* yaũ keí toh kung-leí à?
3. Hái Chung Yát Chìn-Chaang shí-k'eí, kung-lô shīng wai kwan-yūng t'ūng mán-yūng kaau-t'ung wān-shue tsui chūng-iù kè kaau-t'ung sìn, tím-kaaí à?
4. Kìn-chuk heí-ch'e lô, t'it-lô; pin yeūng yūng-í ti t'ūng king-tsaí ti à?
5. Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó kìn-ch'it kung-lô, chak-chūng mi-yě à?
6. T'in Mǐn Kung-lô yaũ kiũ tsô mi-yě lô à?
7. Ni t'iu kung-lô lín-tslp Chung-Kwòk pin shuè t'ūng pin shuè à?
8. Tong-shí Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó tūng uēn keí toh yān lai chuk ni t'iu lô à?
9. Ni t'iu lô yaũ keí ch'eūng à?
10. Yaũ Mūng-Tāk-Leí hui Saam-Faān-Shí kè kung-lô yaũ keí ch'eūng à?



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

shâm very, deeply, extremely, what? who? any, so much,  
so that

tsik-kîk positive as opposed to negative, position action,  
active, active action

sau-chîng sau 'to repair, to improve, adorn'; sau-chîng  
'to repair, to put in order'

p'ò to spread out, to overspread, to arrange, to pave

lô mîn\* mîn\* 'the surface, the face, the front, personally,  
in person'; lô mîn\* 'road pavement'

naï lô naï 'mud, soil, dirt, earth'; naï lô 'earth road,  
muddy road'

p'òh-waaî p'òh 'to break, to destroy, to break through,  
broken'; waaî 'spoiled, out of order, ruined, destroyed,  
damaged, bad, vicious'; p'òh-waaî 'to destroy, to demolish, to  
smash'

kit-kwóh kit 'to connect, to unite, to coagulate, to bear  
fruits, to tie knots, a knot'; kwóh 'result, fruit, consequences,  
really, truly, certainly'; kit-kwóh 'results, outcome,  
consequences, to bear fruits'

yaū-ue yaū 'cause, means, instrument, source, motive,  
from, via, because of'; yaū-ue 'because of, arising from'

chak-chûng to emphasize, prejudiced, to incline towards,  
partial, biased; a.f.: chûng

tsíp-pòk pòk 'to join, to tranship, to connect, to --  
transfer, to graft, to argue, to contradict, to annul, to reverse  
a decision'; tsíp-pòk 'to tranship, to connect and link, to  
receive and forward (as goods)'

lîn-tsip unbroken, connected, to adjoin, to link

T'in Mĩn Kung-Lô T'in 'abbreviation of Yunnan Province';  
Mĩn abbreviation of Mĩn-Tin 'Burma'; T'in Mĩn Kung-Lô 'Yunnan-  
Burma Highway, Yunnan-Burma Road'

Mĩn-Tin Kung-Lô Mĩn-Tin 'Burma'; abbr.: Mĩn; Mĩn-Tin  
Kung-Lô 'Burma Road'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 42

hau-moōn hau 'rear, behind, later, afterwards, after';  
hau-moōn 'backdoor'

mān-mēng\* mān 'to hear, to smell, it is said, famous';  
mān-mēng\* 'famous, well-known, reputable'; a.f.: mān-ming

k'eī-tsik k'eī 'strange, wondrous, peculiar, rare'; tsik  
 'traces, footsteps'; k'eī-tsik 'miracle, legend'

tūng uēn tūng 'to move, to shake, to take action'; tūng  
uēn 'mobilization, mobilization for war, to mobilize'

ch'aán a shovel, to shovel; AN: pá

ch'ōh-t'au\* ch'ōh 'a heavy hoe, to hoe, to dig'; ch'ōh-  
t'au 'a heavy hoe, spade'

k'eī noi k'eī 'period of time, stage, phase'; k'eī noi  
 'within the period of time'; a.f.: k'eī-kaan noi

faan shaan uēt lēng uēt 'to overpass, to exceed, to  
 transgress, more'; lēng 'a mountain range'; faan shaan uēt lēng  
 'to pass through mountains, to run through mountainous country';  
 a.f.: p'ā shaan uēt lēng

shaan-laām cheūng-hei unhealthy mountain vapor; synonym:  
cheūng-hei

yān-luī human beings, mankind

wai-taaī great, extraordinary, magnificent, admirable;  
 a.f.: wai

kit-tsing pán kit-tsing 'to crystalize, crystal'; kit-  
tsing pán 'crystalization, result, achievement'

T'aaī-P'ing Yeūng t'aaī-p'ing 'peaceful, peace'; yeūng  
 'ocean, sea, foreign'; T'aaī-P'ing Yeūng 'Pacific Ocean'

oō-seung oō 'mutual, mutually, each other, together';  
seung 'mutual, each other, together, reciprocal'; oō-seung  
 'mutual, bilateral, mutually, reciprocally, inter-'

oō-seung fai-yíng fai-yíng 'to reflect, mirror image';  
oō-seung fai-yíng 'to compare to, equally, equally good'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

ORAL MATERIAL

Paāk Shiù-Kaaù: Tsoi Chung Yât chìn-chaang ts'in, Chung-Kwòk lün-shuēn chi tsúng tun-wai\* pat-kwòh ng̃-shâp-maân tun. Tím-kaaí à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Yan līt-k'eūng tsoi Chung-Kwòk yaũ noi-hōh shuí-wân kè k'uēn-lei, Chung-Kwòk kè hōng-íp shaũ-chóh haân-chai.

P: Chìn-chaang paaù-faàt shī, Chung-Kwòk yaũ-faan taaí pō-fân shuēn-chèk kè tun-wai\*. Tím-kaaí à?

H: Yan shoh-shaàn sheung-shuēn k'âp shī, koò-ts'z̃ yaũ-faan taaí pō-fân shuēn-chèk kè tun-wai\*.

P: Chìn-chaang k'eī noi uē chìn haũ, ching-foó kík chuè-ì noi-hōh hōng-íp yīng-wân chi faàt-chín. Ching-foó tsô-chóh ti mi-yě à?

H: Ching-foó kìn-tsô-chóh hó toh koi-leūng kè san shuēn, hoi-chóh hó toh san hōng-sin. Yan-wai seúng shuēn-chèk loi wōng p'ing-on uē tsang-ka shuēn hāng ts'uk-tô, shóh-ĩ tsoi kap laũ kè tei-fong ch'it-laâp hó toh t'oh-shuēn chaâm, yik-shuí laai shuēn. T'ūng-shī koi-shīn hōng ching.

P: Ín-tsoi Chung-Kwòk shuēn-chèk kè tun-wai\* shiũ-kwòh ĩ-ts'in kè, taân-hai hōng-íp kè yūng-leūng uē nāng-lík pei ĩ-ts'in wai taaí. Tím-kaaí à?

H: Yan-wai shuēn-chèk kè ch'it-peí uē k'au-tsô koi-leūng-chóh.

P: Ching-foó tím-yeūng\* t'ai-ch'eung tsô shuēn uē ch'it-laâp tsô-shuēn-ch'óng à?

H: Ching-foó tsè ts'in\* pei yān-mān tsô shuēn t'ēng uē ch'it-laâp tsô-shuēn-ch'óng.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

Major White: Before the war Chinese shipping was only a little more than half a million tons. Why was that?

Lt Colonel Hoh: At that time Chinese shipping was handicapped by the inland navigation rights enjoyed by the foreign powers.

W: When the war broke out, a major portion of the shipping tonnage was saved. How was that accomplished?

H: Timely measures in evacuation of merchant vessels saved the major portion of the shipping tonnage.

W: During the war and after the war, more attention was given to the development of inland navigation. What did the Government do?

H: More ships, mostly of the improved type, have been built. New navigation lines were opened in places which were theretofore uncharted. In order to insure safer and faster shipping, towing station's have been established to pull ships upstream, especially through rapids and at difficult stretches of waters. Shipping administration has also been greatly improved.

W: Although at present the number and tonnage of ships are less than before, the total shipping capacity and capability are greater. Why is that?

H: This is due to the improvement of facilities and the fact that ships have been structurally improved.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

W: How does the Government push the program of shipbuilding and building of shipyards?

H: The Government grants loans to people to build ships and to open shipyards.

- 白少校：在中日戰爭前，中國輪船之總噸位不過五十萬噸。點解呀？
- 何中校：因列強在中國有內河水運既權利，中國既航業受咗限制。
- 白：戰爭爆發時，中國有翻大部份船隻既噸位。點解呀？
- 何：因疏散商船及時，故此有翻大部份船隻既噸位。
- 白：戰爭期內與戰後，政府極注意內河航業之發展。政府做咗啲乜野呀？
- 何：政府建造咗好多改良既新船，開咗好多新航線。因為想船隻來往平安，所以增加船行速度，所以在急流既地方設立好多拖船站，逆水拉船。同時改善航政。
- 白：現在中國船隻既噸位少過以前既，但係航業既容量與能力比以前為大。點解呀？
- 何：因為船隻既設備與構造改良咗。
- 白：政府點樣提倡造船與設立造船廠呀？
- 何：政府借錢俾人民造船艇與設立造船廠。

業通航隻限國  
 航交故船受美  
 為上，，亦如  
 通陸權達易，  
 交重特發貿易  
 輸側之不洋公  
 運多運業遠業  
 之，水航之航  
 關輸河於外國  
 有運內由對外  
 最通有。國靠  
 易交國制中多  
 貿展中限故運  
 外發在受，航公  
 對國強極够外船  
 與中列展不對輪  
 去且發位。統  
 過而業噸制總

運注者位搬。南干，  
 中始大噸府線，若洲，  
 空開較隻政航)與美  
 及府，船民新本，南  
 上政廠加國展日)，  
 陸，船增。發至洋洲  
 於要造，線，灣平美  
 由需造隻航力台台北  
 ，之建船新努(南與  
 後代面造發極線與灣  
 發時方建開積日灣台  
 爆應一，，府台台往  
 戰適。廠道政有往來  
 大以業船河，線(來  
 次難航造良後航(線  
 二通展南改灣外線航  
 交發江時台國航洋洲  
 輸意為同至現洋遠歐

民對  
 國故  
 較，  
 業達  
 航發  
 外業  
 對航  
 與因  
 業。增  
 航達  
 河發  
 內為  
 之時  
 灣陸  
 台大  
 現在  
 府貿  
 政外

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

QUESTIONS

1. Tsoi Chung Yât Chîn-Chaang chi ts'in, Chung-Kwòk shón yaü shuēn-chèk kè tun-wai\* taaí-yeük\* keí toh à?
2. Tím-kaaí kòh chôn shí kè shuēn-chèk tun-wai\* kòm shiú à?
3. Chung Yât Chîn-Chaang paaü-faät kè shí-haü, Chung-Kwòk yaü-faan taaí pō-fân shuēn-chèk kè tun-wai\*. Tím-kaaí à?
4. Kòh chôn shí ching-foó hó chuè-i hōng-îp. Ching-Foó tsô-chòh ti mi-yě à?
5. Ī-ka Meĩ-Kwòk yaü yat-kaan hó taaí kè lūn-shuēn kung-sz, foô-chaäk Meĩ-Kwòk t'ūng Uēn-Tung kè hōng-wân. Kòh kaan kung-sz kiù tsô mi-yě mēng\* à?
6. Ī-ka Chung-Kwòk hōng-îp kè yūng-leūng t'ūng nāng-lîk taaí-kwòh ĩ-ts'in kè. Tím-kaaí à?
7. Ching-Foó tím-yeūng\* koó-laí yān-mān ch'it-laáp tsô-shuēn ch'óng à?



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

lūn-shuēn lūn 'steamship, a boat, a ship, a wheel';  
shuēn 'a boat, a ship'; lun-shuēn 'steamship, a boat, a ship'

tun-wai\* tun 'ton'; tun-wai\* 'tonnage'

līt-k'eūng foreign powers, progressive powers

noī-hōh hōh 'river'; noī-hōh 'inland rivers'

k'uēn-leī leī 'benefit, profit, advantage, convenient';  
k'uēn-leī 'privilege, rights'

hōng-īp hōng 'to sail, to navigate, to have a voyage';  
hōng-īp 'shipping business'

haân-chai haân 'to limit, to regard as a limit, to  
 restrict, a limit, a boundary, limitation'; haân-chai 'limitation,  
 restriction, a fixed measure'

shoh-shaân evacuation, to evacuate, to scatter, to  
 disperse (as civilians from a combat zone)

k'âp shī in time, timely

koò-ts'z koò 'a reason, a cause'; koò-ts'z 'therefore,  
 on this account'; a.f.: koò

yīng-wân navigation; synonym: hōng-wân

kìn-tsô tsô 'to make, to produce, to build'; kìn-tsô 'to  
 make, to build'

koī-leūng leūng 'good, good nature, meritorious'; koī-  
 leūng 'to improve, improvement'

loī wōng loī 'to come', a.f.: lai; wōng 'to go, before,  
 former time', synonym: hui; loī wōng 'to come and go, back and  
 forth'

p'ing-on safe, safely, safety; a.f.: on (lit)

ts'uk-tô ts'uk 'fast, quick, speedy, speed, velocity';  
ts'uk-tô 'speed, velocity'

kap laū kap 'quick, fast, haste, urgent, anxious'; laū  
 'current, river, stream, to flow'; kap laū 'rapid current,  
 river where the current is rapid'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 43

ch'it-laâp ch'it 'to establish, to set up, to arrange,  
to devise, to found'; ch'it-laâp 'to establish, to set up'

t'oh-shuên chaâm t'oh 'to drag, to tow, to delay'; t'oh-  
shuên chaâm 'tow-boat station, towing station'; t'oh-shuên  
'tugboat'

yîk-shuí yîk 'to disobey, to rebel, to oppose, contrary,  
rebellious, refractory'; yîk-shuí 'head tide, contrary current,  
against the stream'

laai to pull, to arrest; laai shuên 'to pull ship'

hōng ching shipping administration

yūng-leūng yūng 'to contain, to bear, to allow, to permit,  
to forgive, appearance'; leūng 'quantity, volume, capacity';  
yūng-leūng 'capacity, volume'

nāng-lîk nāng 'able to, may, can, power, talent, ability';  
nāng-lîk 'ability, capability, caliber, power'

ch'it-peî installation, facility, equipment

k'au-tsô structure, frame, to construct

t'ai-ch'eung to promote, to bring forward, to pioneer,  
to initiate, to advocate, to originate; a.f.: ch'eung (lit)

tsô-shuên-ch'óng ch'óng 'manufactory, workshop, plant';  
tsô-shuên-ch'óng 'ship yards, dock yards'

t'êng small boat, boat; AN: chèk

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 44

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Sui-in Chung-Kwòk kè mán-yŭng hōng-hung s'z hó tuén, taân-hai tsùn-pô-tak hó faai. K'òng-chín hoi-ch'í shí, Chung-Kwòk kè hōng-hung sìn yaũ keí ch'eūng à? Fei-kei taaí-yeùk\* yaũ keí toh kà à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Tong-shí yeùk yaũ yat-maân-sei-ts'in kung-leí kè hōng-hung sìn, saam-shâp-kà taaí siú pat-t'ūng kè fei-kei. Sui-in fei-kei, kei-haaí uě p'ó-k'ap k'uét-fât, taân hōng-hung kung-sz tsŭn-leūng leí-yŭng shóh yaũ kè fei-kei k'âp ch'ít-peí. T'ūng-shí Chung-Kwòk yān tui hōng-hung kík chŭng-shí. Hung-wân kè sui-iù chŭk-tsŭm tsang-ka.

C: Chung-Kwòk mán-hōng kei chi shat-s'z lŭt shâm tai, hai m-hai à?

H: Hai, yān-ming sòng-shat waák fei-kei shat-s'z chi tsung shò, peí yām-hōh yat kwòk wai tai.

C: Chŭng yaũ mi-yě chík-tak lŭng yān sîn-mô kà?

H: Tong-shí mǒ mō-sîn-tŭn yān-tô fei-kei fei-haāng, fei-kei ch'eūng mǒ uēn-shŭn chi p'aaú-tô tang chí-fai fei-kei heí-fei t'ūng kòng-lòk. Ni kòh kung-tsòk haaú-lŭt kè keí-lŭk hai chík-tak sîn-mô kè.

C: Shai-kaaí chuè-ming kè Fèi-Foó Cheung-Kwan Ch'an-Naâp-Tak hai Chung-Kwòk tsô-chóh ti mi-yě à?

H: K'ui m-chí tui-ue Chung-Kwòk Hung-Kwan yaũ hó taaí kung-lò, t'ūng-shí tui-ue Chung-Kwòk mán-yŭng hōng-hung yik yaũ hó taaí kung-hin. Tsoi kwòh-hui shâp nŭn tsóh-yaú\*, sheung-íp hōng-hung hai tsoi haák, ying-wân, yaū-ching kòk fong-mŭn, í-king hó yaũ tsùn-pô, hó faat-taât.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 44

Capt Cheung: Despite the fact that commercial aviation has had but a short history in China, it has made much progress.

When the Sino-Japanese War broke out, how many kilometers of air routes and how many airplanes were there in China?

Lt Colonel Hōh: There was a mere total of 13,826 kilometers of air routes with 30 airplanes of different sizes and makes. Shortage of planes, equipment, and supplies have failed to discourage the aviation concerns from making fullest and best use of their planes and facilities. The Chinese people as a whole have become much more air-conscious than before and the demand for air travel and transport has been ever increasing.

C: The accident rate in Chinese civil aviation is very low.

Is that true?

H: Yes. The total number of accidents and mishaps, whether involving casualties or damage or destruction of aircrafts, has been much lower than in any other country in the world.

C: Is there something else which is worth special mentioning?

H: The fact that there is no radio home beacon to guide the airships in flight and that planes take off or land on fields without proper or adequate lighting, makes this efficiency record definitely something to be admired.

C: What did General Chennault, USAF, world famous general of the Flying Tigers do?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 44

H: He rendered a meritorious service to the Chinese Air Force and made a tremendous contribution to Chinese civil aviation. In the past decade or so, much wider and more extensive use has been made of commercial aviation in passenger service, air freight and mail.



## READING MATERIAL

交為，中快，空最，以陸為，海展，中較發，業步之，事進業，通其事，交但航，空，民，陸短以，海最其，國為尤，中史中，在歷其，通速，

民通運較之航一，家交其度輸，國輸，速運業業，對運外之加事事，業定要輸增空空業，事決重運要航航事，空要為中如展用航，航，甚空故發軍民，加量，量為叫，步增容要高盡一又，進漸之重為與，之逐輸為度立類業，代亦運至速建大事，時性除亦之需兩空，於要，度輸必有航，由重率速運，業用，之効之陸率事民，族之輸海效空為

由用最，但利在，量業，長盡事，甚及航，不，民，雖視故，史重，歷為備，之甚設展，業之空發，事對航之，航民與大，民人機極，國與飛有，中府之內，政有期，於現短

中飛在獻，續為，貢逝繼，司後司之病重，公戰公府美業，航大運政在事，民，空對軍航，之司航司將民，名公民公陳之，著空織此，華，最航組，冬在，國央華間年其，中中在期八但，與德戰五，時司納作九死，戰公陳黨一雖，航空軍產，軍，航將共大將斷，國虎對甚陳示

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT

QUESTIONS

1. Hai H'ông-chiu heí-c'í k'ê shí-haû. Chung-kwòk k'ê h'ông-hung, sìn yaũ keí ch'êung à?
2. K'êh ch'ân shí Chung-Kwòk yaũ keí-toh k'á fei-keí à?
3. K'êh ch'ân shí Chung-Kwòk k'ê fei-keí m-kaû, h'ông-hung k'ê ch'it-peí m-kaû. Tí h'ông-hung kung-sz tím tsô à?
4. Chung-Kwòk m'ân-h'ông keí k'ê shat-sz l'it hó tai. Tai-tò tím-yeung à?
5. Fín chúng t'ín-heí y'ung-í l'ing fei-keí shat-sz à?
6. Fei-keí ch'êung p'aaú-tô k'ê tang yaũ mi-y'ê y'ung à?
7. Fei-keí hai hung-chung fei-ha'ng-k'án k'ê shí-haû, y'ung mi-y'ê t'ung fei-keí ch'êung l'ín-l'êk à?
8. Tai-í-Ts'z Shai-kaai Taaí Chín k'ê shí-haû, f'ôô-cha'ak Meí-Kwòk Tai Shâp-Seí H'ông-Hung Tuí k'ê tseung-kwan hai pin-k'òh à?
9. Tai-í-Ts'z Taaí Chín rá-u'ên chí haû. Ch'án Tseung-kwan hai Chung-Kwòk tsô tí mi-y'ê m'ân-h'ông sz-íp à?



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 44

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

man yûng hōng-hung man-yûng 'civil'; hōng-hung 'aviation';  
mān-yûng hōng-hung 'civil aviation'; a.f.: mān-hōng

tuén short, momentary

k'òng-chìn k'òng 'to resist, to oppose, to object';  
k'òng-chìn 'war of resistance (Sino-Japanese War)'

pó-k'ap supply, to supply

tsûn-leûng tsûn 'to exhaust, all, utmost, entire'; tsûn-  
leûng 'to put forth the utmost effort, to try one's best'

leî-yûng to utilize, to make use, to take advantage, to  
exploit, utilization; tsûn-leûng leî-yûng 'to make the fullest  
and best use of'

chûng-shî shî 'sight, view, vision, to see'; chûng-shî  
'to pay great attention to, to regard with esteem, to take it  
seriously, greatly concerned about'

hung-wân air transport, air-lift

chûk-tsîm tsîm 'gradually, gradual, step by step'; chûk-  
tsîm 'gradually, gradual, little by little, day by day, step by  
step'

shat-sẑ shat 'to lose, to miss, loss'; shat-sẑ 'mishap,  
accident'; fei-kei shat-sẑ 'air crash, air accident'; hei-ch'e  
shat-sẑ 'car accident'

lût rate; haaû-lût 'efficiency'; paâk-fân lût 'percentage,  
%'; ts'uk-lût 'speed'

yān-mîng human life

sòng-shat sòng 'to die, to lose, to degrade'; sòng-shat  
'to lose, to die, to deprive of, death, loss'; yān-mîng sòng-  
shat 'casualty, loss of human lives'

tsúng shò total number, total figure

sîn-mô sîn 'to admire, to envy, to be proud of'; mô 'to  
admire, to adore, to honor, to esteem, to love'; sîn-mô 'to be  
proud of, to admire, to envy'

mō-sîn-tîn wireless, radio, radio set

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 44

yǎn-tō yǎn 'to lead, to guide, to direct, to attract, to distract, to cause'; tō 'to guide, to direct, to lead'; yǎn-tō 'to guide, to direct, to lead'

fei-haāng to fly, flight, flying

fei-kei ch'eūng fei-kei 'airplane'; fei-kei ch'eūng 'airport'; a.f.: kei ch'eūng

uēn-shīn perfect, completed, adequate

p'aaú-tō tang p'aaú 'to run, to dash'; tō 'road, avenue, ways and means, reasons, causes'; p'aaú-tō 'runway'; tang 'light, lamp, lighting'; p'aaú-tō tang 'runway lighting, boundary lights'

heí-fei to take off (airplane)

kōng-lōk kōng 'to descend, to drop, to fall'; kōng-lōk 'to land (airplane), landing'

chuè-mīng famous, well-known, celebrated; a.f.: chuè (lit), mīng (lit), mān-mēng\*

fei-foó foó 'tiger'; fei-foó 'flying tiger'

cheung-kwan General; synonym: cheūng

Ch'ān-Naāp-Tak Cheung-Kwan General Chennault

tsoi haāk tsoi 'to load, to contain, to fill up, to carry'; haāk 'passengers, guests, customers'; tsoi haāk 'to carry passengers'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 45

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Uě fei-haang yaũ hín-chuè chí ch'a-í kè hái  
yík-chaám wân-shue. Ts'ing neĩ kóng hă ni chúng wân-shue?

Hôh Chung-Kaau: Hái yung yân-lík t'ung ch'uk-shaang kè. King-  
tsai í p'òk-shât, maân í shât-tsai. Mooĩ-fung tsoĩ hoh-  
nang faân-wai chí noi, í shuí-lô toĩ-t'ai lûk-lô yík-wân.

C: Yík-wân kè kung-kuĩ paau-k'oòt ti mi-yě à?

H: Paau-k'oòt kòk chúng yung yân-lík t'ung ch'uk-shaang laai  
kè fòh-ch'e, t'ěng, mùk-p'aaĩ, fòh-shuēn tsai. Foō-hôh  
ch'uk-shaang hó-ts'ě mã, lui, lō, lòk-t'òh...

C: Tsui chué-iù kè yík-wân kung-kuĩ hái mi-yě à?

H: Hái yung mã waák yân laai kè kaau lün\* fòh-ch'e. Ni ti fòh-  
ch'e mooĩ yât hoh-í wân yat tun chí tun-poòn kè fòh haang  
í-shâp kung-leĩ lô. T'it-lün\* fòh-ch'e hoh-í suén-waai lô-  
mín\*, í-king m-chún haang-shai.

C: Hái t'ung-yung kè shuí-lô yung pin chúng kè wân-shue kung-  
kuĩ à?

H: Kòk chúng taaĩ siú kè shuēn t'ěng hoh-í wân yat tun chí  
seì-shâp tun kè fòh, shâm-chí-foō lûk-shâp tun kè fòh.

C: Mō kung-lô t'ung shuí-lô kè teĩ-fong, k'ui-teĩ yung mi-yě à?

H: Tsaũ yung foó-lík t'oi fòh, taam fòh.

C: Hái Chung-Kwòk, yat-ts'in kung-leĩ kè lô, fòh-ch'e iù kei  
noi, fòh-ch'e iù kei noi, yík-wân iù kei noi à?

H: Fòh-ch'e iù saam-shâp siú-shí, yík-wân iù saam sing-k'eĩ.  
Yík-chaám wân-shue sui-in maân, taân-hái wân-chân, haan m-  
shíu tân-yaũ kè siu-hò, tsit-shaang kei paák-maân uēn.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 45

Capt Cheung: In direct contrast to flying is stage transportation. Please tell us something about stage transportation, sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: Stage transportation is the economical and unpretentious, slow but steady, Chinese way of transporting goods by human carriers and animals. Whenever possible or feasible, waterways are used to substitute or supplement the roads and paths.

C: What do the means of stage transportation include?

H: The means used in stage transportation include carts of various types pulled by men and animals, junks, rafts, steamers, and pack animals such as horses, mules, donkeys, and camels...

C: What is the chief means of transportation?

H: Rubber-tired carts pulled by horses or by men. These carts are capable of carrying 1 to 1.5 tons for 20 kilometers per day. Iron-wheeled carts are prohibited on highways for they may destroy the road surface.

C: What means of transportation are used on navigable waterways?

H: Junks and sampans which vary in size from one ton to over 40, and even occasionally some of 60 tons are used.

C: Where no highways and waterways are available, what do they use?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 45

- H: Human carriers or coolies are used to transport the goods on their backs or shoulders.
- C: In order to cover a distance of 1,000 kilometers in China, how long does it take by train, by truck, and by stage transportation?
- H: It takes 30 hours by train, four days by truck, and about three weeks by stage transportation. Slow but sure, stage transportation represents tremendous savings in the consumption of gasoline...a saving of millions of dollars.



READING MATERIAL

運，比任  
 站，形相在  
 驛，可情通，  
 以，最濟交獻，  
 ，，經中貢  
 中，通與空之  
 通，普境與輸  
 交，最環能運  
 輸，形不國  
 運，用，地，率，中  
 種，實，之，效，對  
 各，最，國，，其，上  
 之，，中，慢，，之  
 國，始，宜，較，來，業  
 中，原，適，輸，年，事  
 在，最，最，運，千，輸  
 為，又，其，數，運  
 輸，而，雖，但，何

路，對以交具驛艇，  
 公，駛，難，陸，工，之，  
 之，行，外，，水，通，遍，船，  
 好，具，以，善，故，交，普，木  
 良，工，此，不，，之，最，，  
 之，通，除，理，具，始，，車，駝  
 缺，交，，管，工，原，船，輪，  
 國，好，牲，通，通，最，輪，膠，  
 中，良，畜，交，交，及，與，，驢  
 ，，無，與，，上，，車，車，  
 中，又，力，達，水，牲，汽，木，  
 年，，人，發，式，畜，替，為，  
 千，平，用，不，新，，代，牲，馬  
 數，不，利，通，之，力，之，畜，  
 去，依，量，交，國，人，以，及，牛，  
 過，高，盡，上，外，以，，具，  
 面，能，水，用，都，主，工，排，  
 路，祇，外，使，通，為，運，木

輸，令消政  
 運，量，之，該  
 站，盡，要  
 驛，，必，求  
 倡，具，不，需  
 提，工，省，之  
 曾，運，節，民  
 ，驛，府，人  
 時，與，政，與  
 陸，度，替，府  
 大，制，面，政  
 在，運，方，應  
 府，驛，一，適  
 政，良，，又，功  
 民，改，化，時，成  
 國，極，代，同，為  
 積，現，，極  
 及，其，耗，策

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 45

QUESTIONS

1. Yîp-chaâm wân-shue hái tím-yeûng\* kǎ?
2. Yîk-chaâm wân-shue kung-kuî paa-k'òot ti mi-yě à?
3. Yîk-chaâm wân-shue tsui chué-iù kè kaau-t'ung kung-kuî hái mi-yě à?
4. Ni ti fòh-ch'e kè wân-shue nāng-lîk tím-yeûng\* à?
5. Yîk-chaâm wân-shue yûng pin keí chúng ch'uk-shaang à?
6. P'ó-t'ung lai kóng, Meï-Kwòk yān tsui chué-iù kè kaau-t'ung kung-kuî hái mi-yě à?
7. Chung-Kwòk kau shik kè t'ěng kè wân-shue nāng-lîk tím-yeûng\* à?
8. Hái Chung-Kwòk, haāng yat-ts'in kung-leï kè lô, fòh-ch'e iù keí noi à?
9. Hái Meï-Kwòk, haāng sei-paak ying-leï kè kung-lô, hei-ch'e iù keí noi à?



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 45

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

hîn-chuè hîn 'evident, obvious, marked, to manifest, to show, to appear'; hîn-chuè 'obvious, apparent, marked, striking'

ch'a-î î 'different, strange, extraordinary, foreign, other, difference, discrepancy'; ch'a-î 'difference, contrast'

yîk-chaâm wân-shue stage transportation; a.f.: yîk wân

p'òk-shât unpretentious, simple and plain, pure and honest, simplicity, frugal

shât-tsaì practical, realistic, substantial; shât-tsaì sheûng 'practically, actually, in fact'

hóh-nāng possible, feasible, can; synonym: nāng

faân-wai scope, sphere, limit; tsoî hóh-nāng faân-wai chi noi 'whenever possible or feasible'

toi-t'ai toi 'to replace, in place of, for, instead of, a substitute, acting'; t'ai 'for, instead of, in place of, to substitute, to change, to replace'; toi-t'ai 'in place of another, to substitute, to take the place of'

mûk-p'aaì mûk 'wood, wooden'; p'aaì 'row, column, platoon'; mûk-p'aaì 'raft'

fóh-shuēn tsai fóh 'fire'; fóh-shuēn 'steamer'; fóh-shuēn tsai 'small steamer, ferry'

foô-hôh hôh 'to carry on the back or shoulder, the idea of gratitude'; hôh 'water-lily'; foô-hôh 'to carry, to bear responsibility'

mǎ horse, surname; AN: chèk

lui mule; AN: chèk

lō donkey; AN: chèk

lòk-t'òh camel; AN: chèk

lūn wheel, ship; kaau lūn 'rubber tire'; kaau lūn fòh-ch'e 'rubber tired cart, rubber tired truck'

suén-waaì suén 'to wound, to injure, to damage'; suén-waaì 'to ruin, to damage, to destroy'

t'ung-yûng t'ung 'to circulate, to understand, to go through, through, mutual'; t'ung-yûng 'in general use, interchangeable'

shâm-chî-foō shâm-chî 'even to the extent of, at the worst'; a.f.: shâm-chî-foō

foó-lîk foó 'bitter, agony, sorrow, suffering, in bad circumstances'; foó-lîk 'coolies'; a.f.: koo-lei (colloq.)

t'oî to carry between two or more persons

taam to carry on shoulders

fóh-ch'e train

siú-shî hour; a.f.: tîm-chung, chung-t'aū

wán-chân sure, dependable careful, safe

haan frugal, thrifty, to save (money, time...); a.f.: tsit-shaáng, shaáng

siu-hò hò 'to waste, to squander'; siu-hò 'expense, consumption, to consume, to waste'

tsit-shaáng frugal, thrifty, to save (expense, time...); a.f.: shaáng, haan (colloq)

chaâm a station (railway), a stop (bus, taxicab, street-car), depot (bus), check point; a.f.: yîk-chaâm wân-shue

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 46

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk tîn-sùn sê-îp, tsui ch'oh hái yaü  
pin ti yân t'aü tsz paân-leĩ kâ?

Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Tsui ch'oh yaü ngoi-yân t'aü tsz paân-leĩ. Haü-  
loi kòk shuè kûk-pô hôp-paân. Haang-ching tsim-tsim\* tsaap-  
chung. Kwòh-hui í saam-shâp nin loi, yaü-ue noi-luên ngoi-  
mò kè kít-kwòh, tîn-sùn sê-îp shaü kík taaí p'òh-waaí.

P: Kòk chúng tîn-sùn chi chung, í pin chúng ts'oi-yüng tsui  
tsó à?

H: Í tîn-pò ts'oi-yüng tsui tsó. K'ei-ts'è hái kòk shuè kûk-  
pô tîn-wâ\*. Haü-loi shî ch'eüng-t'ò tîn-wâ\*, mō-sin-tîn  
t'ung-sùn, mō-sin-tîn kwóng-pòh. Tsui-haü shî tîn-sùng  
seüng-p'in\*. Tîn-shî i-in tsoí ch'aü-waâk kaai-tuên chung.

P: Chung-Kwòk tîn-sùn sê-îp faät-chín tò tím-yeüng\* à?

H: Chung-Kwòk kè tîn-sùn sê-îp, í tîn-pò wai chué, í mō-sin-tîn  
lai pó-chòh. Ts'ui shî-toí kè tsùn-chín, t'üng sê-îp kè  
faät-chín, mooí nin tîn-mân kè shau faät ué tsê-shò yík yan-  
i yat-lô yat-lô tsang-ka. Chi-ue tîn-mân kè chúng-luî,  
taaí pô-fân hái ching-foó t'üng kwan-sê tîn-mân, k'ei-t'a  
hái sheung-îp t'üng sz-yân tîn-mân.

P: Tai-î-Ts'è Taaí Chín k'ei noi, tîn-pò sê-îp tím à?

H: Tîn-pò sê-îp faät-chín taät-tò tsui ko ch'ing-tô. Tui  
tsòk-chín kè pong-chòh kík chi taaí. Mooí ts'è shau-fûk  
yat-kòh shing-shí haü, tsik fói-fûk koi shing ué k'ei-t'a  
kòk teí chi tîn-pò t'ung-sùn.

Major White: At the initial period, who invested in and developed the Chinese tele-communications?

Lt Colonel Hōh: They were developed by foreigners at the initial period and later by the integration of local set-ups to gradually centralize the administration. For the past two or three decades, there has been persistent destruction as a result of civil wars and enemy aggression.

W: Among the various means of tele-communications in China, which was first established?

H: Telegraph service. Next was local telephone. Following that were long distance telephone, radio communication, and radio broadcasting. The latest addition was wireless photo service. Television is still at its planning stage.

W: To what degree is tele-communications service in China developed?

H: Tele-communications service in China centers on telegraphy with radio communication as an auxiliary. With the march of time and development of the services, the annual total of telegraph messages and wordage have been on the increase steadily. Of all the messages transmitted, the majority are government and military telegrams. The rest of them are commercial and private telegrams.

W: How was the telegraph service during World War II?

H: Telegraph service maintained to the optimum greatly

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 46

facilitated military operations. Whenever a city was recovered, telegraphic connections with other cities were immediately resumed.



## READING MATERIAL

管信言，經以責電而之，負與率政比，局效郵相中總之如者門政訊不兩部郵通信故各是信電之位電，短下單與經濟為轄之訊經政管訊通而郵高部通政長較為通外郵較時率在內，需但之

再信機多，電事最達用軍訊發，以通業時尤電事取中用信爭其關電為，機與，加業展率增高進效漸及之高日關代之者機時信政業隨電郵工

類電與與線，長採大線話報有話之已兩有電電替電業有為線線代途業者分有有電長英事要又為用線之中片主報分多無外，相，電可內用國美送多，又國採對中電中甚話話，漸展來，劃類電電前逐發年功籌種為，戰來極近成在業一報抗後積，話重事，電，更業通視信報線話話後事已電電電無電電戰播話但為與線線，廣電，一報無有電與途用

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 46

QUESTIONS

1. Tân-sùn sê-íp yaū Haang-Ching Uên\* pin-kòh pô koón-hât kà?
2. Yaū-ching t'ung-sùn t'ung tân-sùn t'ung-sùn, pin yeung king-tsaí ti, pin yeung kwaí ti à?
3. Chung-Kwòk tân-sùn sê-íp tsui ch'oh hai yaū pin ti yān t'au tsz paan-leí kà?
4. Kòk chúng tân-sùn t'ung-sùn chi chung, pin chúng ts'oi-yung-tak tsui tsó à?
5. Pin chúng ts'oi-yung-tak tsui ch'i à?
6. Tân-pò, tân-wâ\*, mō-sin-tin kwóng-pòh, mō-sin-tin t'ung-sùn, t'ung tân-shi; pin yeung tui kaaü-yük kung-tsòk tsui yaū yung à?
7. Ī-ka mooí nin yung tân-pò kè yān yat-lô yat-lô tsang-ka. Tim kaaí à?
8. Hai Meí-Kwòk, tá tân-pò t'ung tá ch'eung-t'ò tân-wâ\*, pin yeung kwaí ti à?



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 46

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

kūk-pô local, regional, localized

hōp-paân hōp 'to combine, to integrate'; paân 'operation, to operate, to manage'; hōp-paân 'integration, annexation, the integration of certain set-ups'

tsîm-tsîm gradually, by degrees, little by little; a.f.: tsîm, chūk-tsîm, yat-lô yat-lô kôm

noi-luên civil war, anarchy; a.f.: noi-chîn

ngoi-mō mō 'to insult, to disgrace'; ngoi-mō 'trouble coming from without (as a foreign invasion)'

ts'oi-yûng select for use, adoption, selective

tîn-pô telegram, telegraph, cable

k'eî-ts'z̄ ts'z̄ 'number of times, frequency, secondly, next in order, secondary'; k'eî-ts'z̄ 'secondly, next in order, secondary, next, less important'

ch'eüng-t'ō tîn-wâ\* t'ō 'a road, a path, a journey, a career'; ch'eüng-t'ō 'long distance, a long journey'; ch'eüng-t'ō tîn-wâ\* 'long-distance telephone'

mō-sîn-tîn kwóng-pòh mō-sîn-tîn 'wireless, radiogram'; kwóng-pòh 'to broadcast, broadcasting'; mō-sîn-tîn kwóng-pòh 'wireless broadcasting'

tsui-haû the last, final, finally, eventually

tîn-sùng seùng-p'in\* seùng-p'in\* 'photograph, photo'; tîn-sùng seùng-p'in\* 'wireless photo service'

tîn-shî television

ch'aū-waāk ch'aū 'to consider ways and means, to arrange, to plan, to prepare'; ch'aū-waāk 'to plan, planning, blueprint'

pó-chôh pó 'to supplement, to help, to assist, to patch, to mend, to add to'; pó-chôh 'to help, to subsidize, to supplement, auxiliary, supplementary'

ts'uī subsequently, forthwith, to follow, to accord with, to accompany, together, following

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 46

tsùn-chîn progress, advancement; ts'ui shi-toi chi tsùn-chîn 'following the march of time'

tîn-mān telegraph message

shau faât faât 'to dispatch, to issue, to distribute';  
shau faât 'to receive and dispatch, to transmit, transmittance'

yan-î as a result, because of...thus, on which account...  
 then, inferring from this, inconsequence of, and hence, thereby

yat-lô yat-lô gradually, steadily, gradual; a.f.: tsîm-tsîm, chûk-tsîm

k'ei-t'a the rest of..., the others

sz-yān sz 'private'; sz-yān 'private, personal'

taât-tò taât 'to reach, to arrive, to attain'; taât-tò

ch'ing-tò degree, standard, grade, required qualifications  
 or attainments

tsòk-chîn military operation

shau-fûk fûk 'to recover, to return, to reseat, to reply,  
 again, repeatedly, alternative'; shau-fûk 'to recapture(a place)'

fooi-fûk to restore to former condition, to resume, to  
 recover

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

ORAL MATERIAL

Paāk Shiù-Kaaù: Tsê-t's'ung mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh sê-îp ch'uēn-yâp Chung-Kwòk chi haù, Chung-Kwòk yaũ m-shiú mán-yíng kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oi t'ung ching-foó kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oi. Pin chúng tsó-chik-tak uēn-shîn ti à?

Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Tong-ín\* ching-foó tîn-t'oi tsó-chik-tak uēn-shîn-tak toh, koón-leĩ chau-tò-tak toh.

P: Ching-foó tîn-t'oi heung kwòk noi t'eng-ché yung chung-poh pòh-sung, heung kwòk ngoi t'eng-ché yung tuén-poh pòh-sung, Kwóng-pòh tsit-múk paau-k'òt mi-yě à?

H: Tsit-múk paau-k'òt yung Chung Mán t'ung ngoi-mán shi-sê san-mán\* pò-tò, ín-kóng, yam-ngòk, hei-k'êk. Chi-ue Chung-Mán tsit-múk, ch'ui-chóh yung Kwòk-Uě t'ung Uét-Uě tsò kei-poón uě-ín chi ngoi, yik yung Sheung-Hoi Wâ\*, Hâ-Moón Wâ\*, Haak-Ka Wâ\*, Mung-Koó Wâ\*, Sai-Tsong Wâ\*, t'ung kòk chúng fong-ín kwóng-pòh. Ngoi-mán yaũ Ying-Mán, Yât-Mán, Ngòh-Mán, t'ung Tung-Naam À kòk chúng uě-ín.

P: P'ing-kwan mooĩ yat-paak-kòh Chung-Kwòk yán yaũ kei toh foò shau-yam-kei à?

H: Koó-kai p'ing-kwan mooĩ paak yán yaũ t'ing-tim yat-saam foò shau-yam-kei.

P: Chung-Kwòk kè kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oi kè poh-ch'eung kei toh à?

H: King Kwòk-Tsai Mō-Sìn-Tîn Kwóng-Pòh Ooi-Ī chí-t'ing, Chung-Kwòk kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oi kè chung-poh poh-ch'eung ng-ng-ling chi yat-ng-ling-ling chau-poh, tuén-poh poh-ch'eung lûk-ling-ling chi î-lûk-lûk-ling chau-poh.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

Major White: Since radio broadcasting was introduced to China, numerous private-owned and government-owned broadcasting stations came into being. Which one of these two types are better organized?

Lt Colonel Hoh: Government owned broadcasting stations are much better organized and conducted.

W: The government-owned stations use medium-wave to broadcast to listeners at home and short-wave to listeners in foreign countries. What do their programs include?

H: Programs broadcast in both Chinese and foreign languages include news, lectures, speeches, music, and plays. With Mandarin and Cantonese as the basic languages for Chinese programs, various dialects such as Shanghai, Amoy, Hakka, as well as Mongolian and Tibetan are used. Among the foreign languages are English, Japanese, Russian, and various languages spoken in Southeast Asia.

W: On the average, how many radio receivers are there per every 100 Chinese persons?

H: It is estimated that there are about 0.13 sets per every 100 persons.

W: What is the wave-length of the broadcasting stations in China?

H: As designated by the International Radio Broadcasting Convention, the wave-length of broadcasting stations in China is from 550 to 1,500 kilocycles for medium-wave and from 600 to 2,660 megacycles for short-wave.

白少校：之同善  
國台完  
中電得  
入播織  
傳廣組  
業營種  
事民邊  
播少  
廣唔台  
電有電  
線國播  
無中廣  
從，府  
自後政  
的呀？

何中校：多，

白：政府  
節目  
送播  
波廣  
中送  
用播  
者波  
台多聽短  
電得內用  
府到國者  
政週向聽  
然管理台  
當管電國  
的呀？

何：節目  
導節語，各文，  
報文本話同日  
聞中基門，  
新於做厦話文言副  
事至語，藏英語多  
時·粵話西有種幾  
文劇同海，文各有  
外戲語上話外亞人  
同，國用古·南國  
，音樂用亦蒙播東中  
野中音，除外話言，廣同  
也用，之外話言，百  
包括講，之家方文一  
目言客種俄每呀？

白：平均每呀？

何：估計中國  
白：中經  
機·廣五二  
收音機  
副呀？中至  
三多定五六  
一幾指五長  
點長議長波  
定波會波波  
有既播波短  
人台廣中，波  
百電電既波  
每播線台週  
均廣無電週  
平既際播週  
六六六

READING MATERIAL

播之間全之教  
 廣需時達聞化  
 電所之到新文  
 線而短時間際  
 無，最時時國  
 ，遠在一對及  
 中，最能同，  
 法，播在法導  
 辦廣廣能辦報  
 訊最電，訊之  
 通圍線方通場大  
 信範無地種市最  
 電方，之此業獻  
 項地短遠，商貢  
 各之最最地工之  
 在到又到各，業  
 達間達界導事  
 所時內世報育

波方長國  
 短地是，波  
 為之後波短  
 分到最短長  
 可達，為用  
 長能波多時  
 波所中長有  
 之波是波，  
 台短次之波  
 電以其用長  
 ，中，所用  
 言其廣台多  
 而，最電台  
 長波圍際電  
 波長範圍業  
 以與，故商  
 波遠，之  
 中最波內

，最南台地，門  
 台台國在電各語厦  
 電電中址際界英，  
 營營，台國世為話  
 公省後，如全言海  
 與，前台真向語上  
 台台戰電海言之為  
 電電抗播上語用言  
 營營，廣為之常方  
 民市台央台同最之  
 ，為電中電不本他  
 種分際為際種基其  
 兩可國台國各最  
 有又，電之用中語話  
 台台台家大日其國家  
 電電電國最每，客  
 營家之，台播語，  
 公國大京該廣粵話

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

QUESTIONS

1. Hai Chung-Kwòk kè mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oi, mǎn-yǐng kè tsó-chik-tak uēn-shîn ti, yik-waāk ching-foó kè tsó-chik-tak uēn-shîn ti à?
2. Tîn-wâ\*, tîn-shî, t'ūng mō-sìn-tîn kwóng-pòh, pin chúng hui-tak tsui faai, tsui uēn, tsui toh tei-fong à?
3. Tîn-t'oi kè poh-ch'eūng yaũ kei toh chúng à?
4. Sheūng-pîn saam-chúng poh-ch'eūng, pin chúng hui-tak tsui uēn à?
5. Chung-Kwòk tsui taaî kè kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oi kiù tsô mi-yě à?
6. Kwóng-pòh tsit-múk paau-k'òdt ti mi-yě à?
7. Kwóng-pòh kè shî-haũ, tsui kei-poón kè uē-in hai pin saam chúng à?
8. K'ei-t'a kè fong-in hai mi-yě à?
9. Chung-Kwòk yān p'ing-kwan yat-paāk-kòh yān yaũ kei toh foó shau-yam-kei à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ch<sup>2</sup>uēn-yāp    ch<sup>2</sup>uēn 'to propagate, to preach, to introduce,  
to hand down'; ch<sup>2</sup>uēn-yāp 'to propagate into'

kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oi    kwóng-pòh 'to broadcast, broadcasting';  
tîn-t'oi 'broadcasting station'; kwóng-pòh tîn-t'oi 'broadcasting  
station'

tsó-chik    to organize, organization

chau-tò    well arranged, well taken care, considerate,  
thorough; koón-lei m̄-chau-tò 'loosely organized, loosely managed,  
ill-conducted'

t'ing-ché t'eng-ché    listeners, audience, those who listen;  
kwòk-noi t'ing-ché 'listeners in home country'; kwòk-ngoi t'ing-  
ché 'listeners in foreign countries'

chung-poh    poh 'wave'; tîn-poh 'electric wave'; chung-poh  
'medium wave'

pòh-sùng    to broadcast; a.f.: kwóng-pòh

tuén-poh    short wave

tsit-múk    programs

ngoi-mān    foreign language

shī-sz̄    news, current events, world affairs

san-mān\*    news

pò-tô    pò 'newspaper, report, to report'; pò-tô 'reports,  
to report, to inform'; san-mān\* pò-tô 'news report'; Meī-Kwòk  
San-Mān Uē Shai-Kaai Pò-Tô 'U.S. News and World Report'

yam-ngòk    music

hei-k'êk    hei 'shows, movies, drama'; k'êk 'drama, play';  
hei-k'êk 'drama, plays'; hei-k'êk-fà 'dramatic'; hei-k'êk 'comedy'

Kwòk-Uē    Mandarin

Uēt-Uē    Cantonese language

Sheung-Hoi Wā\*    Sheung-Hoi 'Shanghai'; Sheung-Hoi Wā\*  
'Shanghai dialect'



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 47

Hâ-Moōn Wâ\* Hâ-Moōn 'Amoy'; Hâ-Moōn Wâ\* 'Amoy dialect'

Haāk-Ka Wâ\* Hakka dialect

fong-in dialects

Tung-Naām Ā Southeast Asia

p'ing-kwan average, even, averagely, evenly

foô a pair, a set, vice, second to

shau-yam-kei radio, radio set, radio receiver

tîng-tîm decimal point, a.f.: siú-shò-tîm; tîng-tîm yat-saam '0.13'

poh-ch'eūng wave length

kwòk-tsai international

Kwòk-Tsai Mō-Sin-Tîn Kwóng-Pòh Ooi-Ī International Radio Broadcasting Conference

ooi-ī conference, convention, meeting

chî-tîng tîng 'to designate, to decide, to appoint, stable, steady'; chî-tîng 'to designate, to appoint, to earmark'

chau-poh cycle wave (electricity); ts'in-chau 'kilocycle'; chiû-chau 'megacycle (1,000,000)'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Hòh Chung-Kaaù, ts'ing neī kóng hă kwaan-ue  
Chung-Kwòk kè ko-táng hôk-foó peī ngõh-teī chi?

Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Tŝ-t̂s'ūng Chung-Wā Mān-Kwòk shīng-laâp chi  
haũ, ko-táng kaaù-yûk ĭ-king koi-shīn. Ko-táng hôk-foó  
fan-wai taaī-hôk, tûk-laâp hôk-uên\*, t'ūng chuen-foh hôk-  
uên\* saam-chúng. Taaī-hôk t'ūng tûk-laâp hôk-uên\* hoh-ĩ  
ch'it yaũ ĩn-kaù uên\*. Taaī-hôk paau-k'oòt mán hôk-uên\*,  
leī hôk-uên\*, faat hôk-uên\*, sheung hôk-uên\*, kaaù-yûk  
hôk-uên\*, nūng hôk-uên\*, kung hôk-uên\*, i hôk-uên\*. Taân-  
haĩ tsui tai haân-tô yaũ saam-kaan hôk-uên\*, ni saam-kaan  
hôk-uên\* yat-tīng iù paau-k'oòt yat-kaan leī hôk-uên\*, yat-  
kaan haĩ nūng hôk-uên\* waāk kung hôk-uên\* waāk i hôk-uên\*.  
Uē-kwòh taaī-hôk shiú-kwòh saam-kaan hôk-uên\* tsaũ kiù tsô  
tûk-laâp hôk-uên\*. Ch'ui-chóh i hôk-uên\* sui-iù yaũ lûk  
nīn fòh-ch'ing chi ngoi, k'ei-t'a kòk hôk-uên\* tīng-chóh  
seī nīn pat-íp. Chuen-foh hôk-uên\* paau-k'oòt nūng-foh,  
kung-foh, i-foh, iù yaũ leũng nīn chi saam nīn kè fòh-ch'ing.  
Īn-kaù uên\* tsui tai haân-tô iù yaũ saam-kòh haĩ, mōoĩ kòh  
haĩ iù yaũ leũng nīn kè fòh-ch'ing.

C: Ni ti tsui ko hôk-foó haĩ pin-kòh ch'it-laâp kà?

H: Ni ti tsui ko hôk-foó haĩ kwòk-laâp, shaáng-laâp, sz-laâp  
taaī-hôk. Toh-shò tsaâp-chung haĩ Pak-P'ing, Kwóng-Chau,  
Sheung-Hoi saam-kòh mán-fà chung-sam.

C: Chìn shī ni ti taaī-hôk tím à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

H: Chîn shî, Chung-Kwòk yān kè pat-wat-pat-naaû chi tsing-shān,  
hóh-ĩ yaū ni ti kaaû-yûk hôk-foó kè shaang-ts'uēn t'ai-tó.  
Sui-in ni ti taaî-hôk haî tîk-yān chué-iù kwang-chà mûk-piu.  
K'ui-teî ĩ Chung-Kwòk ch'uēn-t'úng kin yán kong ngai chi  
tsing-shān, fǎn-taù t'ò ts'uēn.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

Capt Cheung: Sir, can you tell us something about the institutions of higher learning in China?

Lt Colonel Hōh: After the founding of the Chinese Republic, the system of higher education was improved. Institutions of higher learning were classified into three main groups: universities, independent colleges and technical schools. Universities and independent colleges might establish schools for post-graduate studies. A university consisted of colleges of arts, science, law, commerce, education, agriculture, engineering and medicine. However, there had to be at least three colleges which included science and one of the three colleges of agriculture, engineering and medicine. Those having less than three colleges fell under the independent colleges category. With the exception of medical colleges requiring a six-year course, the term for graduation of all other colleges was fixed at four years. Technical colleges, including agriculture, engineering and medicine required a two to three-year course. Schools for post-graduate study were required to have at least three departments and to give a two-year course of study.

C: By whom were these institutions of higher learning established?

H: They were nationally, provincially and privately established. Most of them were located at the three cultural centers: Peiping, Canton, and Shanghai.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

- C: What happened to these institutions during the War?
- H: During the War the indomitable spirit of the Chinese could be observed from the existence of her educational institutions. Although these institutions have been the major targets of enemy bombings, they have survived and thrived as a true tribute to China's traditional spirit of endurance and fortitude.

等教學大·學院度要院少除，科要最有  
 高·院法學限定學學·外專，院要  
 既高為種究，農低一農大院之·科究系  
 國，分三研院，最院係果學程業醫研個  
 中後府院有學院係學間如立課畢，·每  
 於之學學設理學但間一·獨年年科程，  
 關立等科以，育·三，院做六四工課系  
 吓？成高專可院教院呢院學叫有啦，嘅個  
 講知國·同院學，學，學醫就要定科年三·邊國集中  
 你地民善，學文院醫學院理或院需院農三有程係係集化  
 請我華改院立括學，學間院學院學括至要課府府數文  
 校俾中經學獨包商院間一學間學各包年度嘅學學多  
 中府從己立同學，學三括工三醫他院兩限年高·三  
 何學自有獨學大院工有包或過咗其學有低兩最學海

張上尉：  
 何中校：

張：呢的  
 何：呢的

大上  
 立，  
 廣州  
 ？，廣  
 立，  
 立省平  
 設，北·  
 個立係心



READING MATERIAL

建設建設  
 建建建  
 育要防  
 教重國  
 為之，  
 作他設  
 工其建  
 之，事  
 要礎軍  
 首基，  
 最育設  
 本教建  
 基好學  
 最良科  
 國有，如  
 建民，於  
 國作易  
 如工都

中，年教言，院<sup>+</sup>研，  
 育六學而學有育  
 言教時大圍立設教  
 而等需是範獨又，  
 短初育育其，內商  
 長即教教以學院<sup>+</sup>，  
 之，等等，大學法  
 間級初高年，立，  
 時三，四種獨理  
 及為育年時三與，院<sup>+</sup>  
 易分教六需為學文  
 難可等時，分大括各  
 之度高需育可，包，  
 程制，亦教又院學醫  
 課育育育科育學大，  
 以教教教專教科，工  
 之等等或等專院<sup>+</sup>，  
 國中中育高與究農

立，私私州，  
 公學國之廣  
 為大中辦，  
 分立有合心  
 可市學外中  
 又有大中育  
 學學立與教  
 大大私，化  
 立，學文  
 言公學大大  
 而，大立三  
 織學立私有  
 組大國國國  
 政立及外中平  
 行私學，北  
 以與大學學與  
 學立大大海  
 大省立立上

炸學  
 車，  
 機下  
 飛之  
 人炸  
 敵亂  
 為機  
 校敵  
 學在  
 之但  
 國，  
 中一斷  
 之，不  
 時標續  
 戰目繼  
 抗要然  
 重依  
 之業



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè kaaù-yûk hoh-ĩ fan-hoi pin saam-k'ap à?
2. Ch'oh-táng, chung-táng, ko-táng kaaù-yûk, mooĩ yeung iù kei toh nin à?
3. Ko-táng kaaù-yûk fan-wai pin saam-chúng à?
4. Taaĩ-hôk yaũ kei toh kòh hôk-uên\* à?
5. Hai Meĩ-Kwòk tük taaĩ-hôk, iù kei toh nin chi pat-íp à?
6. Tük i-foh iù kei toh nin à?
7. Kan-kuĩ haāng-ching tsó-chik lai kóng, taaĩ-hôk yaũ hoh-ĩ fan wai pin leung-chúng à?
8. Chung-Kwòk kè saam taaĩ mán-fà chung-sam hai pin saam-kòh à?
9. Meĩ-Kwòk kè ching-chi t'ung sheung-íp chung-sam hai pin shuè à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

ko-táng kaaü-yük ko-táng 'higher, advanced, well-bred, high class'; ko-táng kaaü-yük 'higher education, advanced education'

hòk-foó institution, school

túk-laâp independent, independence; túk-laâp hòk-uên\* 'independent college'

chuen-foh hòk-uên\* chuen-foh 'special curriculum, technical course'; hòk-uên\* 'college'; chuen-foh hòk-uên\* 'technical college'; a.f.: chuen-moôn hòk-uên\*

in-kaü uên\* graduate school, post-graduate school; synonym: in-kaü shóh

hòk-uên\* college in a university, institution; a.f.: uên\*; mán hòk-uên\* 'college of arts'; leí hòk-uên\* 'college of science'; faät hòk-uên\* 'college of law'; sheung hòk-uên\* 'college of commerce, college of business'; nūng hòk-uên\* 'college of agriculture'

kung hòk-uên\* college of engineering

i kòk-uên\* college of medicine

fòh-ch'ing fòh 'lessons, a lesson, homework'; ch'ing 'schedule'; fòh-ch'ing 'curriculum'

foh subject of study, department, classification of second-degree graduates under the former system; nūng foh 'Agriculture (in a university)'; kung-foh 'Engineering'; i-foh 'Medicine'; mán-foh 'Arts'; sheung-foh 'Business'; faät-foh 'Law'; leí-foh 'Science'

haî departments, a department (in a university)

kwòk-laâp taaî-hòk national university

shaáng-laâp taaî-hòk provincial university; Ka-Shaáng Taaî-Hòk 'University of California'

sz-laâp taaî-hòk private university

Pak-P'ing Peiping

chung-sam center, pivot; mán-fà chung-sam 'cultural

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 48

center<sup>3</sup>; kung-îp chung-sam 'industrial center<sup>3</sup>

chîn shî wartime, in war

pat-wat-pat-naaû (naaũ) wat 'to bend, bent<sup>3</sup>; pat-wat-pat-naaû (naaũ) 'indomitable (spirit, will power)<sup>3</sup>; pat-wat-pat-naaû (naaũ) chî tsing-shan 'indomitable spirit<sup>3</sup>

shaang-ts'uên shaang 'to be born, to live in the world, living, life, to produce, survive, survival<sup>3</sup>; ts'uên 'survival, to retain, to be in existence, to keep, to preserve, to store<sup>3</sup>; shaang-ts'uên 'existence, survival, living<sup>3</sup>

tîk-yân enemy, foe; a.f.: tîk

kwang-chà to bomb, bombing; a.f.: chà

mûk-piu target

ch'uên-t'úng tradition

kin yân kong ngai kin 'strong, firm<sup>3</sup>; yân 'patient<sup>3</sup>; kong 'strong, firm, indomitable<sup>3</sup>; ngai 'firm, resolute, intrepid, bold, fortitude, tenacious<sup>3</sup>; kin yân kong ngai 'spirit of endurance and fortitude<sup>3</sup>

fân-taù to strive, to struggle<sup>3</sup>

t'ò ts'uên t'ò 'to desire, to scheme, to plan, map, a picture<sup>3</sup>; ts'uên 'survival, existence<sup>3</sup>; t'ò ts'uên 'for existence<sup>3</sup>; fân-taù t'ò ts'uên 'to strive for existence<sup>3</sup>

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: "Chung-táng kaaù-yûk" ni kòh mǐng-ts'z paau-k'oòt mi-yě à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: "Chung-táng kaaù-yûk" ni kòh mǐng-ts'z paau-k'oòt p'ó-t'ung chung-hòk, sz-faân hòk-haaù, t'ung chik-íp hòk-haaù saam-chúng hòk-haaù. "Chung-hòk" paau-k'oòt ch'oh-chung t'ung ko-chung. Kan-kui k'uĩ-teĩ kè sǐng-chat t'ung king-fai kè loi-uēn, chung-hòk t'ung chik-íp hòk-haaù yaũ kung-laâp t'ung sz-laâp leũng-chúng. Kung-laâp hòk-haaù yaũ kwòk-laâp, shaáng-laâp, shĩ-laâp, t'ung uēn-laâp sei-chúng. Shóh yaũ sz-faân hòk-haaù to hai kung-laâp kè.

C: Chung-hòk keĩ toh nǐn chai à?

H: Chǐng-foó kw'ai-tǐng chung-hòk t'ung sz-faân hòk-haaù lúk nǐn chai. Chung-hòk fan-hoi ch'oh-chung saam nǐn, ko-chung saam nǐn. Yaũ ti chung-hòk chí yaũ ch'oh-chung, ni chúng chung-hòk yík hók-ĩ ch'it-laâp. Taân-hai chung-hòk paau-k'oòt ch'oh-chung ko-chung kè kaaù wai lei-seung ti. Ko-chung hòk-haaù hók-ĩ kaaù-shaũ nũng-foh, kung-foh, sheung-foh.

C: Kan-kui teĩ-fong fan-p'ooi ch'it-laâp chung-hòk kè kai-waák hai tím kà?

H: Kwòh-hui Chung-Kwòk mǒ uēn-peĩ kai-waák, kan-kui teĩ-fong fan-p'ooi ch'it-laâp chung-hòk. Kit-kwóh yaũ ti shaáng, yaũ-k'ei-shĩ uēn-hoi kók shaáng, yaũ m-shiú hòk-haaù. Noi-

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

teī kòk shaáng liū-liū-hóh-shó, hó sui-iù hôk-haaũ. Wai pó-kaù ni chúng ts'ing-ying, ching-foó hã ling mooĩ shaáng fan-hoi chung-hòk, sz-faân hôk-haaũ t'ung chik-íp hôk-haaũ k'ui.

C: Chung-hòk k'ui hai tim ting ka?

H: Chung-hòk k'ui hai kan-kuĩ yã-haú, king-tsaĩ chông-fông, mãn-fã shuí-chún, kaaũ-t'ung kung-kuĩ i ting.

C: Chung-hòk kaaũ-yũk yaũ mi-yě koi-shin à?

H: Chung-hòk haang-ching t'ung foh-ch'ing i-king koi-shin.  
Kaaũ-ts'oi t'ung foh-poón noi-yung paau-k'oòt kung-mãn,  
Chung-Man, lik-sz, teĩ-leĩ, king-kwòh shaan-koi, shik-hòp  
shat-tsoĩ ts'ing-ying.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

Capt Cheung: What does the term "secondary education" include?

Lt Colonel Hōh: It includes three kinds of schools--ordinary middle schools, normal schools and vocational schools. The term "middle school" includes both junior and senior grades. According to their nature and source of income, middle and vocational schools are of two kinds: public and private. The public schools may be national, provincial, municipal or county. Normal schools are all public.

C: How many years are there in the middle schools?

H: The Government stipulated a six-year course for middle schools and normal schools. The middle schools were divided into junior and senior grades, each of three years. Junior middle schools could be established independently, but combined junior-senior middle schools were declared preferable. Senior schools could offer courses in agriculture, industries, and commerce.

C: What is the plan for the regional distribution of institutions of secondary education?

H: In the past, there was no comprehensive plan for the regional distribution of institutions of secondary education. As a result, some provinces, especially those along the coast, were crowded with schools while interior provinces had only a few and were badly in need of them. To remedy the situation the government promulgated regulations so that each province

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

was divided into middle, normal and vocational school districts.

C: How are the middle school districts created?

H: The middle school districts were created in accordance with population, financial condition, cultural level and communication facilities.

C: What improvements have been made in the field of secondary education?

H: Improvements were made in administration of the middle schools and in their curriculum. The contents of the instructional materials and the textbooks of the courses in citizenship, Chinese literature, history and geography were revised to fit actual conditions.

張何：上尉校：「中包業同既同省師幾規學的以既授地中立海寥呢學區區  
 等括學高來私立範多定分中設較農方國中各寥種，係係  
 教普校中源立，學年中開學立為科分有學省可情師點根  
 育」通三，兩市校制學初祇，理，配完，數形範定據  
 呢中種根中種立都呀同中有但想工設備結有，學學  
 個學學據學，係？師三初係的科立計果唔好政校？口  
 名，校佢同公同公範年中中，中劃有少需府同，經  
 詞師，地職立縣立學，校高呢包中科既據省校學令業  
 包範「中既業學立既六中種括學，計地，校每學  
 括學學性學校四，年三中初校，方尤內，省校  
 也校包質校有種制年學中可係點配是各補開，文  
 野，括同有國，中，亦高以劃分其地為分區，化  
 呀同初經公立所，中有可中教  
 ？職中費立，有

張何：中政學府  
 張何：根過據去  
 張何：中中學學



張何：中學  
 ：中  
 學  
 水教行政內地理  
 準育有同內容，  
 交也課程包括過  
 通野改已公刪  
 工善經民改  
 具而呀改，適  
 定？善中文合  
 材歷在情  
 同史形  
 課，形

## READING MATERIAL

「質」平省  
視不各  
重配地  
多分內後  
，量，落  
策數多遍  
政之甚普  
育生校育  
教學學教  
等與之故  
中校城  
之學大數  
國，干可  
中量，若寥  
去視海寥  
過重沿校  
不，學  
而均之

省文而時加  
各，形同增  
將少情府及  
，多通政，  
形之交，法  
情口與外授  
種人，之教  
此區况此式  
救該狀除新  
補以濟，用  
為，經少採  
府區，多，  
政校低之材  
來學高校教  
年干之學善費  
近若準區改經  
為水該量育  
分化定盡教

，通民業方  
種普公職三  
三，有，業  
為校本，商  
分學課理與  
可業其地業  
，職，工  
類，中史，  
種校高歷業  
之學，農  
育範中學重  
教師初化側  
等，為，多  
中學分文程  
於中可英課  
至通又，之  
普學文校  
即中中學面

方全處國度之度  
一健壞該制府制  
，不於應之政育  
度或多適想於教  
制，點與理由之  
種處優，而樣備  
一壞其形備一完  
何其令情完是一  
任有，之一亦為  
，亦救國為度成  
家時補該是制漸  
國同相合度育已  
個，互適制教良  
一點能度該等改  
何優如制，中力  
任其，該要之努  
有處使需國斷  
面之及之中不

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè chung-táng kaaü-yûk fan wai pin saam-chúng à?
2. P'ó-t'ung chung-hôk paau-k'òdt pin leŭng-chúng à?
3. Ch'oh-chung keí nín à? Ko-chung keí nín à?
4. Kan-kui hôk-haaü kè sîng-chat t'üŋ king-fai kè loi-uên, chung-hôk t'üŋ chik-îp hôk-haaü hoh-î fan wai pin leŭng-chúng à?
5. Kung-laâp hôk-haaü yaü hoh-î fan shîng keí chúng à?
6. Chung-hôk kè fòh-ch'ing paau-k'òdt ti mi-yě à?
7. Chik-îp hôk-haaü kè fòh-ch'ing toh-shò chak-chûng mi-yě à?
8. Kwòh-hui Chung-Kwòk ti chung-hôk fan-p'ool-tak m-p'ing-kwan. Tím-yeŭng\* m-p'ing-kwan à?
9. Ching-foó tím-yeŭng\* pó-kaü ni chung ts'ing-ying à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

- mīng-ts'z terminology, a noun; synonym: mīng, mēng\*
- sz-faân hôk-haaû normal school; sz-faân hôk-uēn\* 'normal college'
- ch'oh-chung junior high school
- ko-chung senior high school
- sīng-chat chat 'quality'; leūng 'quantity'; sīng-chat 'nature'
- king-fai expenditure
- loi-uēn source; a.f.: uēn
- chai system, to stop, to halt; a.f.: chai-tō 'system'
- kw'ai-tīng to stipulate, to require, stipulation, requirement
- leī-seúng ideal
- kaaû-shaû teaching, to teach, professor
- fan-p'ooi to distribute, to disperse, to arrange, to organize, distribution
- uēn-peī comprehensive, complete, perfect, fully prepared
- noi-teī interior provinces, inland
- liū-liū-hóh-shó shó 'to count, to enumerate'; liū-liū-hóh-shó 'sparing, sparse, very few, sparingly distributed'
- pó-kaù kaù 'to rescue, to save, to remedy'; pó-kaù 'remedy, to save the situation'
- hâ līng līng 'an order, to order, to cause, to let'; hâ līng 'to give order, to issue order, to order, to promulgate regulations'
- chông-fông chông 'shape, form, appearance'; fông 'condition, situation, circumstance'; pēng fông 'condition of the illness'; shât-fông 'actual situation, actual condition'; chông-fông 'condition, situation'; king-tsai chông-fông 'economic condition, financial condition'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 49

shuí-chún level, standard; mān-fà shuí-chún 'cultural level'

kaaù-ts'oi ts'oi 'materials, stuff, quality'; kaaù-ts'oi 'teaching materials, instructional materials'

fòh-poón textbooks

noî-yūng contents

kung-mān civics, citizenship

teî-leĩ geography

shaan-koi shaan 'to cancel, to expunge, to erase and alter, to efface, to geld'; shaan-koi 'to erase and alter, to revise'

shik-hôp to suit, to fit, to meet, to comply with

shât-tsoî actual, real; shât-tsoî ts'ing-ying 'actual situation'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Chung-Kwòk siú-hòk ne?

Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Siú-hòk kaaù-yùk chuè-chûng sò-ch'ui mán-maäng kè kung-tsòk. Ni chúng kung-tsòk hai ching-foó ts'oi-naáp k'eüng-pik kaaù-yùk nǎ nín kai-waák shī hoi-shaú. Uē-suèn nǎ nín chi haú, sei shing meí shaú kaaù-yùk kè i-t'ung shaú-kwòh yat nín k'eüng-pik kaaù-yùk. Kan-chuē kai-waák shât-haäng yat-kòh sei nín kai-waák, lǐng ts'uen kwòk paát shing sai-man-tsaí shaú kwòh leüng nín k'eüng-pik kaaù-yùk. Kan-chuē yaú tsoi shât-haäng yat-kòh sei nín kai-waák, hei-mông uēn-ts'uen sò-ch'ui uēn kwòk mán-maäng. Kan-kuì ni kòh kai-waák, Chung-Yeung Ching-Foó, shaäng ching-foó, shī ching-foó, uēn ching-foó, hóp-tsòk ch'au-peí king-fai, uē-peí siú-hòk hoi-siu.

C: Ni kòh kai-waák yaú mǎ shât-shi à?

H: Chín-chaang paaù-faát lǐng-tò nǎ nín k'eüng-pik kaaù-yùk kai-waák, pat-nāng òn-chiù uēn tǐng kai-waák shât-shi. Kan-kuì Kaaù-Yùk Pô kè t'ung-kai, saam-fân chi i kè Chung-Kwòk yān-haú hai mán-maäng. K'ei-chung taaí-yeùk\* i-maân-maân yān hai shâp-nǎ sui i sheung, sei-shâp-nǎ sui i hâ.

C: Kaaù-shaú kè shī-haú, k'ui-teí yung mi-yě uē-in à?

H: Chung-Kwòk kòk chúng hòk-haú kaaù-shaú shóh yung kè uē-in, yaú-k'ei-shī hai Wā-Naām teí-fong, ying-in yung koi teí kè wâ\* t'ung fong-in. Sui-in king-kwòh keí ts'è uē-in wân-tung. Taân-hai lai uē kóng Kwóng-Tung Wâ\* yat-taaí teí-

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

fong, kaaü-shaü Kwòk-Uě pat-kwòh yaü-uē kaaü-shaü ngoi-  
kwòk uě yat-yeûng. Yat-poon t'aaü-tô tui Kwòk-Uě yaü-uē  
ngoi-kwòk wâ\*. Kwóng-Tung yän kiù Kwòk-Uě tsô "ngoi-kong  
wâ\*".

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

Capt Cheung: How about the primary education in China?

Lt Colonel Hōh: In primary education, emphasis has been laid on work in wiping out illiteracy. This was begun when a five-year plan for compulsory education was adopted by the Government. At the end of the five-year period, it was expected that more than 40 per cent of the entire number of illiterate children would have received compulsory education for one year. Following this, it was planned that a four-year program would be enforced during which 80 per cent of the children of the entire country would receive two years of compulsory education. Another four-year program was to be launched and it was expected that illiteracy would be completely wiped out. According to this plan, the Central Government, provincial, municipal and county governments were to cooperate in making appropriations for the expenditures of the primary schools.

C: Has this plan been carried out?

H: The outbreak of the War made it impossible to carry out the five-year program of compulsory education as originally planned.

Statistics of the Ministry of Education show that  $\frac{2}{3}$  of the Chinese population are illiterate. Among these illiterates, approximately 200,000,000 are within the age bracket of 15 and 45.



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

C: What language do they use for instruction?

H: The languages used for instruction in various schools, particularly in South China, are languages and dialects spoken in those regions and areas. Despite several language movements in regions such as the Cantonese-speaking areas, the teaching of Mandarin is regarded as the teaching of a foreign language. The general attitude toward Mandarin is identical to that toward any foreign tongue. The Cantonese people call Mandarin, "The language north of the (Yangtze) river".

張何 上尉校 :

五，強年兩個文，籌  
作育後年四過一國府作  
工教之一個受行全政合  
嘅迫年過一仔實除央府  
育強五受行仗再掃中政銷  
文納算童實細又全，縣開  
除採預兒劃成住完劃，學？  
掃府，嘅計八跟望計府小呀  
？重政首育住國，希個政備  
呢注嚟開教跟全育，呢市預  
學育作時受，令教劃據，有  
小教工劃未育，迫計根府費  
國學種計成教劃強年，政經  
中小呢年四迫計年四育省  
備計

張何 呢個戰爭 :

不嘅萬以  
計劃，二二歲  
分大十  
育，三  
中四  
實施，其  
上  
迫實計  
統育以  
年計嘅  
係五  
十  
人係  
國  
下  
萬  
中  
萬  
下

張何 授國中 :

其話運動  
？尤嘅運  
呀，地言  
言該語  
語語用次  
野嘅然幾  
也用仍過  
用所，經  
地授方然  
地教地雖  
，校南  
候學華言  
時種係方  
嘅各是同

但係例如講廣東話一帶地方，教  
授國語不過對國語做「外江話」  
一般態國語教如外外國語樣廣  
東人叫國語

READING MATERIAL

以，以，中，中，教育，教育，高等，高等，高初，中，等，而，中，本，等基，初最主，之為為，國教育，中教教，等學，初小

· 年政，小六行練史，高共在訓歷，與總，民，小，內公字，初年之有寫，即三學程，時中課書，段需於其讀，階小設，兩高學轄話，有，小管說，育年多接，教三甚直樂，學時，學音，小需國中，小中受育理，初在上體地

約要擬強時育計，重草施歲文定，多最曾實年除原，太部府民干掃照，育育政國若全按，文教前對到完能，為故戰，達後不，題，劃於年作，問上旨計民三工，之以文年國十部，大二除三個於全，最份掃十每望，育三為之定希發，教口一盲規，爆，國人之文，學戰，中國作除育入抗施，全工掃教須因實，佔之一迫即惜劃

提國為，次用東語，數採廣外，曾校以如，府學其有，政各尤語課，國中國授，言全其對語，語令，度粵，之下功能用，用，成之仍，所動能人地，課運不般各，授言但一東，於語，廣，至一課著果，統授顯結，倡語最故

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè ch'oh-táng, chung-táng, ko-táng kaaü-yûk, pin chúnng tsui kei-poón à?
2. Siú-hôk kaaü-yûk iù kei toh nin à?
3. Siú-hôk kè fòh-ch'ing paau-k'oòt ti mi-yě à?
4. Chung-Kwòk kaaü-yûk tsui taaî kè mǎn-t'ai hai mi-yě à?
5. Chung-Kwòk kè mǎn-maāng toh-tò tím à?
6. Mi-yě kiù tsô k'eūng-pik kaaü-yûk à?
7. Haü-loi Chung-Kwòk kè sò-ch'ui mǎn-maāng kè kai-waāk mǎ shing-kung. Tím-kaai à?
8. Hai Kwóng-Tung Shaáng, sin-shaang kaaü shue kè shi-haü, yung mi-yě uē-in à?
9. Tím-kaai hai Kwóng-Tung m-hóh-i yung Kwòk-Uě kaaü-shue à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

siú-hók primary schools

sò-ch'ui sò 'to sweep, to clean away, to exterminate, a broom'; ch'ui 'to remove, to take away'; sò-ch'ui 'to wipe out'

mān-maāng maāng 'blind, loss of sight'; mān-maāng 'illiteracy, illiterate'

ts'oi-naâp naâp 'to receive and accept, to enter, to insert, to adopt'; ts'oi-naâp 'to accept (as proposals), to adopt (as opinion)'

k'eūng-pik pik 'to force, to compel, to press'; k'eūng-pik 'to force, to compel, to press, compulsory'; k'eūng-pik kaaü-yük 'compulsory education'

hoi-shaú to begin, to start, to commence; a.f.: hoi-ch'í, heí-shaú, ch'í

uê-suên to expect, a budget

i-t'ūng t'ūng 'children, a child, a kid'; i-t'ūng 'children, juveniles, teenagers'

ch'aū-peî to plan, to prepare for, to make preparation; a.f.: ch'aū; ch'aū-peî king-fai 'to raise fund, fund-raising, to make appropriation'

hoi-siu to spend (money), expenditure

shât-shi to carry out (plan), to execute (plan), to apply

òn-chiù òn 'to place the hand on, to press down, introductory word to an editorial note, according to, as'; chiù 'according to, to follow'; òn-chiù 'according to, to comply with'

uēn-tīng kai-waâk original plan, originally planned

t'úng-kai statistics; t'úng-kai shò-tsê 'statistical figures'

ĩ sheūng above

ĩ hâ below, beneath; ĩ ngoi 'besides'; ĩ noi 'within'; ĩ ts'in 'before'; ĩ hau 'afterwards'; ĩ loi 'all along, till the present'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 50

yīng yīng-in as before, still, yet again, as usual; a.f.:

laî uē laî 'example, regulations, rules, laws'; laî uē  
'for example, for instance'

yat-taaî a region, a stretch of country, a neighborhood

yat-poon general, average, most, majority

t'aaî-tô t'aaî 'manner, attitude'; t'aaî-tô 'attitude  
towards, behavior, demeanour'

ngoî-kong wâ\* (colloq) the language north of the (Yangtse)  
River

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk shě-ooî\* kaaù-yûk kung-tsòk kè mùk-tik haî mi-yě à?

Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Shě-ooî\* kaaù-yûk kung-tsòk kè mùk-tik yîk tsoî sò-ch'ui măn-maäng. Lîng măn-chùng shik tûk, shik sé, kaaù k'ui-teî tím-yeüng\* sau-yeüng tsž-keí, kaaù k'ui-teî p'ó-t'ung shě-ooî\* shaang-oôt sheüng-shik, kaaù k'ui-teî kwòk noî t'üng kwòk-tsaî taaî sž. Koò-ts'ž ch'it-laâp hó toh shîng-yân hôk-haaù, faât yam hôk-haaù, sheung-foh hôk-haaù, kung-foh hôk-haaù, maäng lüng á hôk-haaù, koo-i uên\*, pòk-mât uên\*, ngai-shût koón, yam-ngòk hei-k'êk uên\*, t'ò-shue koón, lai shât-in ni chúng măn-chùng kaaù-yûk kung-tsòk.

P: K'ui-teî tím tsò faât à?

H: Hei-k'êk, yam-ngòk, kwóng-pòh, tân-yíng shîng wai shě-ooî\* kaaù-yûk yaü-haaù kè kung-kuî. Kaaù-Yûk Pò tsó-chik laū-tüng shik hei-k'êk paan, tò shuè piú-in. Ni ti hei-k'êk paan ch'ui-chóh hei-k'êk piú-in chi ngoî, yüng ch'eüng koh, waâk wâ\*, t'üng k'ei-t'a kòk chung ngai-shût lîng yat-poon măn-chùng tui shě-ooî\* kaaù-yûk faât-shaang hing-ts'ui.

P: K'ui-teî yaü mǒ seüng-tò yüng mǒ-sîn-tîn kwóng-pòh t'üng tân-yíng à?

H: Yan-wai mǒ-sîn-tîn kwóng-pòh t'üng tân-yíng tui-ue shě-ooî\* kaaù-yûk yaü taaî kè chúng-iù sîng, shóh-i Kaaù-Yûk Pò t'ui-haäng ni leüng chúng paân-faât. T'üng kwóng-pòh tân-



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

t'oi hip-t'ing ka-ch'aap kaaü-yûk tsit-mûk. Yau t'ung ying-  
ip kung-sz hôp-tsòk p'aak kaaü-yûk ying-p'in\*. T'ung-shi  
t'ai-ch'eung ts'uên-kwòk ĩ-ĩm mùk-shaü kaaü-yûk.

P: Shing-tsik tím à?

H: Chung-Kwòk sui-in tsik-k'ik t'ui-haang man-chùng kaaü-yûk,  
taan-hai yan-wai tei-fong t'aaí taaí, yan-hau t'aaí toh,  
kaau-t'ung kw'an-naan, noi-luên ngoi-mö, k'ap kòk chúng  
yan-sö, shing-tsik sheung mei hoh-koon.

Major White: What is the objective of social education in China?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The work of social education aims at wiping out illiteracy. It teaches the people to read and to write, how to cultivate themselves, a general knowledge of social life, and information on national and international affairs.

Therefore many adult schools, phonetic schools, commercial schools, industrial schools, schools for the blind, deaf and dumb, schools for orphans, museums, art galleries, schools of music and dramatic arts and libraries are established in order to realize the work of people's education.

W: How do they go about this work?

H: Drama, music, radio and motion pictures have become effective vehicles and means of social education. The Ministry of Education organized circuit dramatic troupes which have since performed in various places. Besides dramatic performances, these troupes promote interest in social education among the masses through singing, drawing and other arts.

W: Have they thought of using radio broadcasting and motion pictures?

H: Realizing the importance of radio broadcasting and motion pictures as a means of social education, the Ministry of Education popularizes these two mediums. Arrangements are

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

made with the broadcasting stations to insert in their scheduled programs on education and to work in close cooperation with the motion picture concerns to produce educational pictures. In the meantime, the ministry promotes audio-visual education throughout the country.

W: What is the result?

H: Mass education, though intensively carried out, has not been very fruitful because of the vast area, high population, lack of communication, interruptions of wars and many other factors.

白少校：中國社會教育工作既目的係也野

何中校：中呀社會教育工作既目的亦寫地內人工，工  
何：社會教育工作既目的亦寫地內人工，工  
何：社會教育工作既目的亦寫地內人工，工

白：地戲  
何：地戲  
白：地戲  
何：地戲

白：地戲  
何：地戲  
白：地戲  
何：地戲

目授教育。  
白：成績點呀？  
何：中國雖然積極推行民衆教育，但係因  
為地方太大，人口太多，交通因  
難，內亂外侮，及各種因素，成  
績尚未可觀。

教甚會中  
 等不社，  
 高史，等  
 ，歷上初  
 等其際在  
 中於實不  
 ，由，  
 等，意性  
 初育注要  
 除教甚重  
 ，會不之下  
 育社仍有之  
 教一之教育  
 之有對民教  
 國尚民國等  
 中，國對高  
 外，育，  
 育長教等

· 盲施強最可國育  
 異夠文可行，接高教  
 差不童，施效直增人  
 各是兒易，有，可成  
 又仍為較育最育接做  
 歲，一盲文，教間叫  
 年盲，文人下會，又  
 其文種童成之社盲育  
 且除兩兒除形用文教  
 ，掃有除掃情採除會  
 多以盲掃要此為掃社  
 太育文，但在法育故  
 育教，盲，辦教，  
 文等言文育難救等準  
 國初而人教甚補初水  
 中靠歲成迫育之助育  
 只年為強教想幫教  
 如以一行迫理以民

，普最法  
 讀，其辦  
 識已，效  
 遍自事有影  
 普養大之電  
 眾修際行，  
 民眾國施播  
 令民及其廣  
 是教家，  
 的又國化樂  
 目，會音  
 之外識社，  
 育之常育劇  
 教此活教戲  
 會除生是是  
 社，會想具  
 寫社理工  
 識通高或

各之  
 以育  
 加教  
 再會  
 ，社  
 多行著  
 甚推顯  
 素故甚  
 因，不  
 之題仍  
 盲問績  
 文一成  
 成濟其  
 做經，  
 於，多  
 由，多  
 政治尚  
 種政難  
 困

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

### QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk kè kaaù-yûk, ch'ui-chòh ch'oh-táng, chung-táng, ko-táng kaaù-yûk chi ngoi, chûng yaũ yat-chúng mi-yě kaaù-yûk à?
2. Chung-Kwòk kè mǎn-maāng yaũ pin leũng-chúng à?
3. Shě-ooi\* kaaù-yûk kè mûk-tik hai tím à?
4. Ching-Foó ch'it-laáp hó toh mi-yě hôk-haaũ lai shât-in ni chúng mǎn-chùng kaaù-yûk kè kung-tsòk à?
5. Ch'ui-chòh ni ti hôk-haaũ chi ngoi, chûng ch'it-laáp ti mi-yě à?
6. Koo-i uên\* hai yung lai tsô mi-yě kà?
7. Shi-haāng shě-ooi\* kaaù-yûk pei-kaaù yaũ-haaũ kè kung-kuĩ hai mi-yě à?
8. Neĩ i-wai tím-yeung\* chi hoh-i ling mǎn-chùng tui ni ti yě faat-shaang hing-ts'ui à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

shě-ooî\* society, community; shě-ooî\* kaaù-yûk 'social education'

mān-chùng chùng 'a crowd, a mob, many?'; mān-chùng 'the people?'; mān-chùng kaaù-yûk 'mass education?'

sau-yeŭng to cultivate virtue of moral excellence of the heart, to cultivate oneself.

shaang-oôt living, livelihood

shing-yān adult

faât yam yam 'tone, sound, music?'; faât yam 'to pronounce, pronunciation?'; faât yam hōk 'phonetics?'

lūng deaf

á dumb

koo-î uên\* koo-î 'orphan?'; synonym: koo; koo-î uên\* 'orphanage, school for orphanage?'

pòk-mât uên\* museum

ngai-shût koon ngai-shût 'arts?'; koón 'a public office, a hall, a tavern, a private dwelling?'; ngai-shût koón 'art gallery?'; pòk-mât koón 'museum?'

t'ō-shue koon t'ō-shue 'library books?'; t'ō-shue koón 'library?'; t'ō-shue-koón koón-lei-uên 'librarian?'

faât method, ways and means, laws, regulations

tīn-yīng movie, cinema, motion picture

laū-tūng tūng 'to move, to take action, mobile, active?'; laū-tūng 'mobile, circulating?'; laū-tūng shik 'mobile style?'

paan a class, a group, a troupe; hei-k'êk paan 'dramatic troupe?'; laū-tūng shik kè hei-k'êk paan 'circuit dramatic troupe?'

tò-shuè everywhere, anywhere, every place, any place

piú-in to demonstrate, to exhibit, to perform, performance

ch'eùng koh ch'eùng 'to sing, singing?'; koh 'songs?'; ch'eùng koh 'to sing, to sing song, singing?'

waāk wa\* waāk 'to draw, to paint, to make painting?'; wâ\* 'a drawing, a painting, a movie?'; waāk wâ\* 'to paint'



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 51

pictures, to draw'

hìng-t's'ui interest; ngõh tui k'ui yau hìng-t's'ui 'I am interested in her'; ni pòon shue hó yau hìng-t's'ui 'this book is very interesting'; ngõh tui k'ui faat-shaang hìng-t's'ui 'I became interested in her'

t'ui-haäng to carry into operation what has already been decided

hip-tîng to negotiate, to make negotiation, to sign a pact, to make arrangement with, to make agreement

ka-ch'aap ch'aap 'to insert into'; ka-ch'aap 'to insert, to fill in'; ka-ch'aap tsit-mûk 'to insert programs'

yîng-îp kung-sz yîng abbr. of tîn-yîng 'motion picture'; yîng-îp kung-sz 'motion picture company, movie studio'

p'aak tîn-yîng p'aak 'to make (as movie), to strike, to pat, to clap'; p'aak tîn-yîng 'to make movie, to produce movie'

yîng-p'in\* movie, motion picture; abbr: p'in\*; AN: pô, ch'ut

i-îm mûk-shau i 'ear, ears'; îm 'to receive, to dye'; mûk 'eye, eyes'; shau 'to receive, to teach'; i-îm mûk-shau 'audio-visual'

kw'ân-naân difficulty, hardship, hazard, difficult, hard, hazardous

yan-sô yan 'reason, cause, factor, because of, because, due to, owing to'; yan-sô 'factors'

sheung still, and besides, yet, in addition to; sheung meî 'not yet', a.f.: chung meî

koon to see, to view, to behold; hoh-koon 'worth seeing, fruitful, considerable'; sheung meî hoh-koon 'has not yet been fruitful'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 52

ORAL MATERIAL

Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên\* hai mi-yě à?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk tsui ko kè hôk-shût ĩn-kaù kei-kwaan hai kwòk-laâp Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên\*. Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên\* fan-hoi shâp-kòh pō-moōn, paa-k'òot mât-leī hôk, fâ-hôk, kung hôk, teī-chat hôk, t'in-mān hôk, hei-tseung hôk, tūng-mât hôk, chik-mât hôk, sam-leī hôk, līk-sz hôk, uē-ĩn hôk, shē-ooī\* hôk. Tūng-mât hôk t'ūng chik-mât hôk hai yat-kòh pō-moōn. Līk-sz hôk t'ūng uē-ĩn hôk hai yat-kòh pō-moōn, Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên\* sui-ĩn king-fai, yān-ts'oi, ch'it-p' vaĩ-haân, taân-hai i-ĩn tsik-kik tsùn-haāng ĩn-kaù kung-tsòk.

P: Yat-kaú-līng-līng nĩn Chung-Kwòk yan-wai K'uēn-Fei Chi Luēn kè kwaan-hai, Chung-Kwòk iù p'ooi-sheung līt-k'eung kè Kaang-Tsz P'ooi Foón kè ts'in\*, līt-k'eung toh-shò pei-faan Chung-Kwòk. Ni ti ts'in\* yung lai faat-yeung Chung-Kwòk t'ūng ni ti kwòk-ka kè kaaù-yūk mán-fà sz-íp. Tsz-ts'ūng Chung-Kwòk t'ing-chi p'ooi foón chi hau tsaū tím à?

H: Ni chúng kung-tsòk toh-shò hai k'aaù tsāng-uē kei-kam t'ūng tseung-hôk-kam. Sui-ĩn king-tsaĩ yaĩ-haân, taân-hai kung-tsòk shòh paa-k'òot kè faân-wai hó kwóng-foòt. Uē kaaù-oōn kaaù-shaũ, kaaù-oōn hôk-shaang, p'aaĩ kaaù-shaũ k'áp hôk-shaang ch'ut yeung laũ hôk táng kung-tsòk.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 52

Major White: What is Academia Sinica?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The highest academic research organization in China is the national Academia Sinica. It maintains ten institutes to include physics, chemistry, engineering, geology, astronomy, meteorology, zoology, botany, psychology, history, philology and social sciences. Zoology and botany are combined into one, and history and philology are combined into another. Despite the fact that Academia Sinica has limited funds, personnel and equipment, it carries on an extensive program.

W: The payments of the Boxer Indemnity to the foreign powers, caused by the Boxer Rebellion Incident in 1900, were returned to China to be used to promote the education and culture between China and these countries. What happened since the suspension of these payments?

H: This work depends mainly on the endowment income and scholarship. Despite financial limitations, the work covers a wide range of activities which include programs such as exchange of professors and students and awards of research professorships to study abroad.



立高干十學史語最經族  
 國最若該文歷史亦受民開  
 國及·天，歷作來，展  
 三全門究，學以著年言量  
 有為部研學理，其所語盡  
 關院個之質心中，該，能  
 機該十術地，所善但史未  
 之，有學，學究完·歷尚  
 轄一設學學物研最良於，  
 直之內科工植各備優對作  
 府中，種，，設最·工  
 統其關各學學學員亦制究  
 總·是機責化物會人績限研  
 國院究員理動社之成之之  
 中究研，物，，所作環境面  
 由研術所為學學究工環方  
 央學究門象言研，及各  
 中之研部氣語言多費等

術為項後之學駱  
 學款該惜作獎王  
 育賠時·工或大  
 教項當面究，油  
 化該·方研金煤金  
 文·源業術基國基  
 國款來事學與美之  
 中賠要育種贈者氏  
 與子主教此之名特  
 ，庚之化故面著福  
 來為費文·方最王  
 年者經於止各中大  
 十關究用停靠其車  
 數有研定劃能·汽  
 去最術指計只助與  
 過究學被款，補金  
 研國款賠行之基  
 之中賠來進金氏

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 52

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk tsui ko kè hôk-shût in-kaù kei-kwaan hai mi-yě à?
2. Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên\* yaü pin-kòh kei-kwaan koón-hât kà?
3. Chung-Yeung Īn-Kaù Uên\* fan-hoi pin kei kòh pô-moôn ă?
4. Kwòh-hui kei shâp nîn, Chung-Kwòk hôk-shût in-kaù kè king-fai chué-iù k'aaù mi-yě à?
5. Haü-loi Kaang-Tsú P'ooi-Foón t'ing-chí. Ni chúng in-kaù kung-tsòk kè king-fai toh-shò k'aaù mi-yě à?
6. Yaü ti tseúng-hòk-kam hai yûng lai tsô mi-yě kà?
7. K'ei-chung tsui ch'ut-mêng\* kè tseúng-hòk-kam hai mi-yě à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 52

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

Chung-Yeung Īn-Kau Uên\* Academia Sinica; Kwòk-Laâp Chung-Yeung Īn-Kau Uên\* 'National Academia Sinica'

hòk-shùt academic, scholastic, scholarship, learning, art;  
hòk-shùt ĩn-kau 'academic research'

kung hòk engineering; abbr: kung

teĭ-chat hòk geology; abbr.: teĭ-chat

t'in-mān hòk astronomy; abbr.: t'in-mān

tung-māt hòk tung-māt 'animal, living creature'; tung-māt hòk 'zoology'; abbr.: tung-māt

chĭk-māt hòk chĭk-māt 'plant'; chĭk-māt hòk 'botany';  
abbr.: chĭk-māt

sam-leĭ hòk sam-leĭ 'psychology'; sam-leĭ hòk 'psychological science'; abbr.: sam-leĭ

yaũ-haân limited; mō-haân 'unlimited'

tsùn-haāng to carry out, to work on, to continue, to progress, to advance, to keep progressing; tsùn-haāng chung 'in advancing, in progressing'

K'ueñ-Feĭ Chi Luēn k'ueñ 'fist, to punch'; feĭ 'bandits, rebels'; K'ueñ-Feĭ Chi Luēn 'Boxer Rebellion'

kwaan-hai relationship, causes, reasons, consequences, involvement; yaũ-kwaan-hai 'related, concerned, connected with', a.f.: yaũ-kwaan; ue...yaũ-kwaan 'is related to..., having something to do with...'

p'ooĭ-sheūng to compensate, to indemnify, to repay;  
synonym: p'ooĭ, sheūng

Kaang-Tsz P'ooĭ Foón Kaang-Tsz 'the year of the cyclical characters, ie. year of 1900'; p'ooĭ foón 'payments of indemnity'; Kaang-Tsz P'ooĭ Foón 'The Payments of Boxer Indemnity'

faät-yeūng to further, to glorify, to extend the glory, to brighten, to promote

kwòk-ka a nation, a country; a.f.: kwòk

t'ing-chĭ to discontinue, to halt, to suspend, to stop, to check; synonym: t'ing, chĭ (lit)

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 52

tsâng-uě tsâng 'to give a present, to bestow, to donate';  
uě 'to give a present, and, with'; tsâng-uě 'to give as a present,  
 a present or gift, endowment'

kei-kam endowment fund, reserve fund, foundation fund;  
Lòk-Shî Kei-Kam 'Rockefeller Foundation'; Fuk-Tâk Kei-Kam 'Ford  
 Foundation'

tseúng-hôk-kam tseúng 'to encourage, to commend, to  
 exhort, a prize or reward'; tseúng hôk 'to encourage to do  
 literary work, to encourage people to go to school'; kam 'money,  
 funds, cash, gold'; tseúng-hôk-kam 'scholarship, fellowship'

kwóng-foòt kwóng 'wide, broad, extensive, Kwangtung,  
 Kwangsi'; foòt 'broad, wide, vast'; kwóng-foòt 'broad, wide,  
 vast, extensive, many-sided'; faân-wai hó kwóng or faân-wai hó  
kwóng-foòt 'the scope is very broad'

kaau-oôn to exchange, mutual exchange

ch'ut yeüng yeüng 'ocean, foreign, foreign country';  
ch'ut yeüng 'to go abroad, to go to foreign country'

laū hôk to go abroad to further study; ch'ut yeüng laū  
hôk 'to go abroad to further study'

táng et cetera, class, rank, grade, equal to, to wait  
 for, to let



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

ORAL MATERIAL

Paāk Shiù-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk kè sz-faàt chai-tô hai tím kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk kè sz-faàt chai-tô yaũ saam k'ap faàt-uên\* t'ung huí-hóh shám-p'oon saam ts'è. Ni saam k'ap faàt-uên\* hai tei-fong faàt-uên\*, kò-táng faàt-uên\*, Tsui Ko Faàt-Uên\*. Ch'ui-chóh ying-sz òn-kín\* t'ung shìn-tung noi-luên, yǎn-hei ngoi-waân í ngai-hoi kwòk-ka on-ts'uên kè òn-kín\*, iù hai kò-táng faàt-uên\* tai-yat ts'è chap-haang shám-p'oon chi ngoi, k'ei-t'a shóh yaũ òn-kín\* yat-lút hai tei-fong faàt-uên\* tai-yat ts'è shám-p'oon, hai kò-táng faàt-uên\* waák fan uên\* tai-í ts'è shám-p'oon. Uē-kwóh òn ts'ing m-hai chùng-taaí kè, chak chí chún shám-p'oon leung ts'è.

P: Mooí kòh uên t'ung shí to yaũ yat-kòh faàt-uên\* mà?

H: Kan-kui Chung-Kwòk faàt-uên\* tsó-chik faàt, mooí kòh uên t'ung mooí kòh shí to ying-koi yaũ yat-kòh faàt-uên\*. Uē-kwóh ti uên hai sai kè, k'ui-tei hóh-í hóp-maaí yung yat-kòh faàt-uên\*. Uē-kwóh yat-kòh uên hai ták-pít taaí kè, k'ui hóh-í yaũ yat-kòh faàt-uên\* t'ung keí kòh fan uên\*. Taân-hai ni chùng paân-faàt shí-sheung uē-tó k'uét-fát yan-ts'oi t'ung ts'oi-ching kw'án-naân.

P: Tík-yán ts'am-leúk t'ung noi-chín kè shí-haũ tím à?

H: Kóh chàn shí hó toh ni ti faàt-t'ing m-hóh-í hai k'ui-tei poón-loí kè tei-fong paân-leí òn-kín\*, shóh-í líng-tò uên-kò t'ung pei-kò t'ung tá koon-sz kè yán chùng-chúng m-fong-

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

pîn. Wai pó-kaù ni chúng ts'ing-ying heí-kìn, shóh-ĩ  
ch'it-laâp laū-tūng shik faat-t'ing lai paân-leĩ tai-ĩ  
ts'è shám-p'oòn òn-kîn\*. Tai-yat ts'è shám-p'oòn i-in  
yaū tei-fong faat-uên\* paân-leĩ.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

Major White: What is the Chinese judicial system?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The Chinese judicial system has three grades of courts and allows three trials. The three grades of courts are the district court, the high court, and the Supreme Court. Except criminal cases and cases involving the engineering of domestic disturbance, provocation of external dangers detrimental to the national security, the first trials of which should be held by the high court, the first trials of all other cases are held by the district court, and their second trials by the high court or its branches. In minor cases only two trials are permitted.

W: Does each hsien and municipality have a court?

H: According to the Organic Law of Chinese Courts, there should be a court in each hsien and municipality. Several small hsien may share one court, while an unusually large hsien may have one court and a number of branch courts. There have been, however, both personnel and financial difficulties.

W: What happened during the enemy aggression and civil wars?

H: During those times many courts could not function at their original seats, thus causing great inconvenience to litigants, both prosecutors and defendants. As a remedy, the circuit court system was instituted to handle second trials, the first trials being left to district courts.

白少校：中國審判，事危法所審審准市法應該，果一辦法。戰既時候點呀？  
 白中校：中國可法咗患高其一二則縣中市係院可係財政畧好既同

白：每個縣中市係院可係財政畧好既同  
 白：每個縣中市係院可係財政畧好既同

白：敵人陣  
 白：個陣

便·為補救呢種情形起見，所以  
設·立流動式第一法庭審判依  
判·案·件·第·一·次·審·判·依·然·由·地·方  
法·院·辦·理·。

權試機  
五考高  
或，最  
，法其  
立司，  
分，法  
權法司  
五立為  
為，者  
度政律  
制行法  
治為行  
政權執  
之五責  
國該負  
中·司  
憲法  
監察  
關為

法院\*  
高法院\*  
最高法  
為地  
關及  
機院\*  
法法  
執等  
高有  
最下  
院之  
司法  
最高  
最

應之小  
市院數  
每法時  
縣·有  
每件·  
，案定  
，法之  
織地小  
組該大  
之理積  
院辦面  
法以之  
國，市  
中院縣  
據法該  
根一以  
有少合  
設多縣  
院與

級，三  
三院第  
用法，  
採等審  
，高二  
，第次  
制院，  
判法審  
審方一  
之地第  
法為為  
司級審  
國三三  
中·言  
於度院  
至制法  
審高·  
三最審  
地大  
有及  
院

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk yaũ ng̃-kòh uên\*, haäng-ching, laâp-faät, sz-faät, haaú-shí, kaam-ch'aät. Pin-kòh uên\* foô-chaäk chap-haäng faät-lüt kà?
2. Sz-faät uên\* kè tsui ko chap faät kei-kwaan hai mi-yě à?
3. Chung-Kwòk kè faät-uên\* yaũ saam-chúng, pin saam-chúng à?
4. Chung-Kwòk kè sz-faät shâm-p'oòn chai-tô hai tím kà?
5. Hai p'ó-t'ung ts'ing-ying chi hâ, chí chún shâm kei toh ts'è à?
6. Uē-kwòh òn ts'ing chûng-taaî kè shí-haû tsaû tím à?
7. Hai pin chúng ts'ing-ying chi hâ, yaũ ko-táng faät-uên\* chap-haäng tai-yat shâm à?
8. Uē-kwòh yaũ kung-ch'aán tóng shîn-tung kung-yân m̄-tsô kung, ni kîn òn-kîn\* ying-koi tím-yeung\* paân à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

sz-faàt chài-tô    sz-faàt 'judicial'; chài-tô 'system'; sz-faàt chài-tô 'judicial system'

k'ap    a grade, a degree, a step, a class, ranks

shám-p'òòn    shám 'to try, to judge, trial'; p'òòn 'to sentence, to judge, sentence (law)'; shám-p'òòn 'to try, to judge, trial'

teî-fong faàt-uên\*    district court

ko-táng faàt-uên\*    high court

Tsui-Ko Faàt-Uên\*    Supreme Court

yíng-sẑ    yíng 'punishment, torture, to punish'; yíng-sẑ 'a criminal case'

òn-kîn\*    a law case; a. f. : òn; AN: kîn; yíng-sẑ òn-kîn\* 'a criminal case'

shln-tûng    to instigate, to incite, to conspire

yǎn-heí    to induce, to make possible, leading to

ngoî-waân    waân 'calamity, evil, trouble, to suffer'; ngoî-waân 'foreign invasion'

ngai-hoî    ngai 'danger, peril, dangerous, perilous, critical'; hoî 'to injure, to harm, to kill, to murder, harmful'; ngai-hoî 'to endanger, to jeopardize, to sabotage'

on-ts'uên    safety, security, safe; synonym: on, p'ing-on

chap-haäng    to carry out, to execute, to conduct, to take place, to hold

yat-lût    uniformly, totally, no exception, all

fan uên\*    fan 'branch'; fan kung-sz 'branch company'; fan uên\* 'branch court, branch hospital'

òn ts'ing    ts'ing 'condition, circumstances, situation'; òn ts'ing 'case condition, nature of the case'

chûng-taaî    important, heavy, severe, great, weighty  
(in the sense of importance)



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 53

tsak a particle indicating consequence or result-wherefore, then, and so, in that case, consequently, immediately, in accordance with, a rule, a law, a pattern, a standard, a list

tsó-chik faät faät 'law, regulation, method'; tsó-chik faät 'law of organization'

hōp-maai to combine

shī-sheūng often, frequently, all the time; a.f.: sheūng  
(lit), shī-shī

uê to meet, to encounter, to happen, to occur

ts'am-leūk to invade, to encroach upon, to usurp, aggression; a.f.: ts'am

faät-t'ing a court

uēn-kò the plaintiff, the prosecutor

peî-kò the defendant

tá koon-sz koon-sz 'a lawsuit'; tá koon-sz 'to go to law, to litigate, litigation'; tá koon-sz kè yān 'litigant'

chúng-chúng various, various kinds, all kinds

waî...heî-kín in order to..., for the sake of..., for...

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

ORAL MATERIAL

- Paâk Shiù-Kaaù: Sei-yíng kè p'òon-k'uet iù yaü pin-kòh shám-hât chí hók-í chap-haäng à?
- Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Kan-kui yíng-sz faät, sei-yíng kè p'òon-k'uet yat-tíng iù yaü Sz-Faät Haäng-Chíng Pô shám-hât chí hók-í chap-haäng. Pit-iù shí, Sz-Faät Haäng-Chíng Pô míng-líng kím-ch'aät pô sheüng-sò, waák míng-líng kím-ch'aät pô sz-tsž t'íu-ch'a òn-kín\*. Chík chí-tò Sz-Faät Haäng-Chíng Pô tik-k'òk yíng-tíng p'òon-k'uet hái hóp là, ín-haü chí há líng chap-haäng sei-yíng. Chap-haäng sei-yíng kè yat-k'ei yíng-koi iù hái shau-tò míng-líng chí haü saam yat chap-haäng.
- P: Chung-shan kaam-kám òn-kín\*, ch'iu-kwòh nǎ nín kè ch'eüng-k'ei kaam-kám òn-kín\*, oôn-yíng òn-kín\*, t'üng yaü-kwaan ngoi-kwòk k'íu-mán kè òn-kín\* ne?
- H: Yík-to iù king-kwòh Sz-Faät Haäng-Chíng Pô shám-hât chí hók-í chap-haäng p'òon-k'uet.
- P: Yaü-kwaan ts'oi-ch'aán k'üen kè òn-kín\*, yán-sž òn-kín\*, kít-fan t'üng wai-ch'aán òn-kín\*, yaü-kwaan kung-küng tsó-chik òn-kín\*, yaü-kwaan ngoi-kwòk tsík-mán òn-kín\* ne?
- H: Kan-kui Mán-Sž Faät, yík-to yat-tíng iù king-kwòh Sz-Faät Haäng-Chíng Pô shám-hât chí hók-í chap-haäng p'òon-k'uet.
- P: Tsui Ko Faät-Uên\* hái mi-yě à?
- H: Tsui Ko Faät-Uên\* hái ts'üen kwòk tsui ko kè ts'oi-p'òon shók. Tsui Ko Faät-Uên\* yaü keí kòh mán-sž shám-p'òon

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

t'eng, keí kòh ying-sz shám-p'oòn t'eng. Mooí kòh shám-p'oòn t'eng yaũ nǎ-kòh faàt-koon, k'ei-chung yat-kòh hai shaú-tsik faàt-koon. Meí hâ p'oòn-k'uet chi ts'in, nǎ-kòh faàt-koon yat-ting iù yat-ts'ai kím-t'ó.

P: Haāng-ching faàt-uên\* ne?

H: Haāng-ching faàt-uên\* yik-to hai yat-yeung. Mooí kòh shám-p'oòn t'eng yaũ nǎ-kòh faàt-koon, yat-kòh hai shaú-tsik faàt-koon. Hoi shám t'ung p'oòn-k'uet òn-kín\*, nǎ-kòh faàt-koon yik-to iù yat-ts'ai kím-t'ó.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

Major White: By whom must death sentences be reviewed before they can be enforced?

Lt Colonel Hōh: According to the Code of Criminal Procedure, death sentences have to be reviewed by the Ministry of Justice before they can be enforced. Whenever necessary, the Ministry of Justice may order the Prosecuting Department to make appeals or instruct it to conduct private investigations of cases. Only when the Ministry is absolutely sure of the correctness of the sentences, will it order their execution which should take place three days after the arrival of its order.

W: How about cases involving life imprisonment, prison terms over five years, cases of deferred punishment, and cases involving foreign nationals?

H: They also have to be reviewed before the sentences are enforced.

W: How about cases involving property rights, personnel, marriage and inheritance, public organization, as well as involving foreign nationals?

H: According to the Code of Civil Procedures, the verdicts also have to be reviewed by the Ministry of Justice before they are enforced.

W: What is the Supreme Court?

H: The Supreme Court is the highest tribunal of the land. It

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

has several civil courts and criminal courts. In each court there are five judges, one of whom is the presiding judge. In rendering verdicts, the five judges must confer together.

W: How about the administrative courts?

H: The same applies to the administrative courts. Five judges attend each court, one of whom is the presiding judge. In holding trials and rendering verdicts, the five judges must confer together also.



法下齊  
個未一  
五·要  
有官定  
廳法一  
判席官  
審首法  
個係個  
每個五  
廳中前  
判其之  
審，決  
事官判  
檢討

白：行政法院呢？

何：行政法院亦都係一樣，每個審判廳有開要  
行政法院五個同齊  
法官亦都  
法官亦  
每個  
係五  
樣，  
一個  
係，  
都  
法官  
亦  
同  
齊  
檢  
討





INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

QUESTIONS

1. Kan-kuí Chung-Kwòk kè faàt-lùt, faàt-lùt yaũ pin leũng taaí luí à?
2. Shám-p'òdn chi haũ kè p'òdn-k'uèt yaũ keí toh chúng à?
3. Ni keí chúng p'òdn-k'uèt, tsuì ch'ũng kè haí pin chúng à?
4. Faàt-uên\* p'òdn-k'uèt-chòh chi haũ, iũ king-kwòh pin-kòh kei-kwaan kè shám-hât à?
5. Pit-iũ shí, Sz-Faàt Haãng-Ching Pô hoh-ĩ ming-ling pin-kòh kei-kwaan sheũng-sò à?
6. Sheũng-sò tò mi-yě shí-haũ, faàt-uên\* chi chap-haãng p'òdn-k'uèt à?
7. Faàt-uên\* chap-haãng sei-ying kè yât-k'eí, haí shau-tò ming-ling chi haũ kè tai keí yât à?
8. Yaũ-kwaan ts'oi-ch'aán k'uên kè òn-kín\* haí mán-sz faàt, yik-waák haí ying-sz faàt à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

seí-yīng death penalty

p'òon-k'ùet k'ùet 'to decide, to determine'; p'òon-k'ùet  
'to sentence, sentence'

shám-hât hât 'to review, to estimate, to appraise'; shám-  
hât 'to review, to estimate, to appraise'

yīng-sz faat yīng 'penalty, punishment, torture'; yīng-sz  
faat 'Code of Criminal Procedure'

kím-ch'aat pô prosecuting department; kím-ch'aat koon  
'prosecutor'

sheung-sò sò 'to plea, to appeal'; sheung-sò 'to appeal'

sz-tsê privately, secretly, private

yīng-tīng yīng 'to recognize, to acknowledge, to admit,  
to confess'; yīng-tīng 'firmly believed, to be positive, to be  
confident, to recognize for a certainty'; yīng-wai 'to acknowl-  
edge, to believe'

hòp correct, true, total, to combine, to join, to close,  
to shut

yât-k'eí a date, a set date

chung-shan chung 'the end, final, finally, the whole of,  
after all, still, death'; chung-shan 'all one's life, a life-  
time'

kaam-kàm confinement in prison, imprisonment, confinement

chung-shan kaam-kàm life imprisonment

ch'iu-kwòh to exceed, to surpass, to exceed or surpass  
in degree (more, longer...); synonym: ch'iu, kwòh

ch'eung-k'eí long term, long period; ch'eung-k'eí kaam-  
kàm 'long term imprisonment'

oôn slow, tardy, leisurely, gradually, to delay, to retard,  
to slow down; oôn-yīng 'to reprieve, deferred punishment'

yaũ-kwaan related, concerned, to have relationship

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 54

k'iū-mān emigrants, fellow countrymen overseas; Mei-Kwòk  
k'iū-mān 'Americans residing overseas'; ngoī-kwòk k'iū-mān  
 'foreign nationals', abbr.: ngoī k'iū

ts'oi-ch'aán property, synonym: ch'aán; ts'oi-ch'aán  
k'uēn 'property rights'

wai-ch'aán wai 'to leave behind, to bequeath, to hand  
 down, to lose or neglect, to forget, to abandon'; wai-ch'aán  
 'inherited property'

kung-kūng public

mān-s'z civil case (law); mān-s'z faàt 'Code of Civil  
 Procedure'

ts'oi-p'oòn to try, to judge, to sentence, judgment;  
ts'oi-p'oòn koon 'a judge'; ts'oi-p'oòn shóh 'tribunal, court  
 of justice'

shám-p'oòn t'eng t'eng 'a hall, a court, a lodge, a room,  
 a chamber'; shám-p'oòn t'eng 'law court'; mān-s'z shám-p'oòn  
t'eng 'civil court'; yíng-s'z shám-p'oòn t'eng 'criminal court'

faàt-koon a judge; sháu-ts'ik faàt-koon 'a presiding  
 judge'

k'im-t'ó to confer, to discuss, to analyze, discussion,  
 analysis; synonym: t'ó-lún, sheung-t'ó, sheung-leūng, t'ó

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Wai sò-ch'ui ching-foó yān-uēn mǒ-pai heí-kin, Chung-Kwòk yǎu shóh-wai Kung-Mô Yān-Uēn Fung-Keí Ch'ing-Kaaí Wai-Uēn Ooi\*. Neí hoh-í kóng hǎ ni kòh wai-uēn ooi\* peí ngòh-teí t'eng, tak mà?

Hòh Chung-Kaaí: Ni kòh wai-uēn ooi\* fan-hoi Chung-Yeung Wai-Uēn Ooi\* t'ung teí-fong wai-uēn ooi\*. Leung-kòh to hai yāu Sz-Faát Uēn\* chik-tsip koón-hát. Chung-Yeung Wai-Uēn Ooi\* yung lai ch'ing-kaaí ts'uēn kwòk tsin-yām í sheung ké haang-ching koon-uēn, t'ung Chung-Yeung Ching-Foó kòk kei-kwaan wai-yām í sheung ké haang-ching koon-uēn. Teí-fong wai-uēn ooi\* mooí shaang ch'it yǎu yat-kòh, yung lai ch'ing-kaaí teí-fong ching-foó wai-yām í hā ké haang-ching koon-uēn.

C: Kwòk-Mān Ching-Foó ts'oi-yung kaak-san kaam-yük paan-faát. Ni kòh paan-faát hai tím ká?

H: Shát-shi ts'eung-sai kaam-yük koón-leí, fàn-lín, ts'ing-kit, wai-shaang kòk faát-líng. T'ung-shí kin-chuk san kaam-yük, koi-shín kau kaam-yük. Kaam-yük foó ch'it i-uēn\*, kóm-fà uēn\*, t'ò-shue koón, wán-tung ch'eung. Ch'it yǎu kòk chún kung-ch'eung, fàn-líng yān-faân\* yán-ts'aát, chai haaí, tsò shaam, tau múk, chik pò chún-chún kung-ngai.

C: Chín shí Chung-Kwòk shát-shi shik-fòng yān-faân\* yáp ng faát-líng. Chan tíng ká ká?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

H: Chan kè. Chung-shan kaam-kâm kè yān-faân\* tsoi kaam-kâm nǎ  
nín ĩ sheung, t'ūng shâp nín kaam-kâm kè yān-faân\* tsoi  
kaam-yūk leung nín ĩ sheung, hōh-ĩ yâp nǎ. Tsoi kwan-yík  
shī-kaan tōng-tsòk tsoi kaam-yūk shī-kaan. Uē-kwóh hái  
chín ch'eung yaũ tâk-pít kung-lō waāk tá-sheung ĩ ts'aan-  
fai-ché, t'ō-ying ts'ui-siu.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

Capt Cheung: In order to wipe out corruption caused by the government officials, China has a so-called Commission for the Disciplinary Punishment of Public Functionaries. Can you tell us something about this commission, Sir?

Lt Colonel Hōh: This commission has two divisions, one central and the other local, both subject to the jurisdiction of the Judicial Yuan. The central commission punishes administrative officials throughout the country of and above the recommended rank, and public functionaries in the various Central Government organs above the delegated rank. The local commission, of which each province has one, punishes local government officials of and below the delegated rank.

C: The National Government adopted a program of prison reform. What is this program?

H: It promulgated detailed regulations concerning management training and sanitation in prisons. At the same time, new prisons were erected, and old prisons improved. Attached to each prison were a hospital, a reformatory, a library, and athletic grounds. There were several workshops teaching the inmates printing, shoemaking, tailoring, carpentry, cloth-weaving and other useful trades.

C: During the war, China promulgated regulations governing the release of convicts for military service. Is that true?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

H: Yes. Life convicts having served more than five years, and convicts sentenced to ten years of imprisonment and having served more than two years of their term, may be released for military service. Their days of service in the armed forces are counted off their term of imprisonment. Furthermore, in case of special merit or disablement from battle wounds, they are pardoned.

張上尉：為掃除政府人人員舞弊起見，委我中員地國會聽，

何中校：呢個委員會分開中都央委員會，由黎同院直全中央員黎官，方接國政地懲員，管薦府方戒，以機關會每府，上關曾政，既委任省，政以設任，行個行，

張：國民政府採用法詳細監獄管理，新監獄辦法，呢個辦

何：實施詳細監獄法令，監獄圖，抖實架身？

張：戰時中定假架身？

何：真嘅，終身監禁，呢人犯在監禁五年以



兩間有刑  
 獄時場徒  
 監役戰者，  
 在軍噤者，  
 犯在果廢  
 人。如殘  
 概伍。而  
 禁入間傷  
 監以時打  
 年可獄或  
 十，監勞  
 同上在功  
 ，以作別  
 上，當特  
 取

READING MATERIAL

員。人少。政府多。政之。有件。都案。項。該。是。一。者。一。何。同。是。任。不。亦。上。形。界。件。情。案。之。弊。國。舞。中。

掃員該件。量人。案。盡務轄弊。與公管舞。一。接。之。治。織。直。員。政。組。院。官。良。法。府。改。見。司。政。為。起。由。理。府。弊。辦。政。舞。會。為。之。員。務。國。員。委。任。中。人。戒。之。在。務。懲。會。除。風。委。公。紀。員。

方。其。官。官。務。地。弊。弊。職。與。個。舞。舞。其。員。會。有。上。上。個。務。員。祇。以。以。一。公。委。國。任。任。有。弊。央。全。薦。委。設。舞。中。國。關。省。之。為。會。全。機。每。下。分。員。戒。各。以。可。委。懲。府。會。任。會。央。及。政。員。委。員。中。查。央。委。省。委。調。中。方。各。該。會。為。及。地。戒。員。務。懲。委。職。員。員。是。

犯。干。以。家。人。若。役。行。國。及。放。軍。實。對。理。釋。務。法。犯。管。曾。服。辦。人。之。府。國。與。獄。政。為。策。善。監。政。政。改。對。時。伍。項。前。府。戰。入。該。以。政。其。從。比。意。使。自。理。後。注。管。前。為。犯。禁。之。獻。戰。甚。人。監。獄。貢。抗。練。之。替。監。有。訓。類。代。甚。之。種。以。來。亦。

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

QUESTIONS

1. Shai-kaaí sheûng yâm-hôh yat-kòh kwòk-ka, to yaũ ching-foó yân-uên mǒ-pai kè òn-kîn\*. Tím-kaaí à?
2. Chung-Kwòk kè Kung-Mô Yân-Uên Fung-Keí Ch'ing-Kaaí Wai-Uên-Ooi\*, hai yaũ pin-kòh kei-kwaan chik-tsip koón-hât kà?
3. Ni kòh wai-uên ooi\* kè yâm-mô hai tím kà?
4. Ni kòh wai-uên ooi\* hóh-í fan wai pin leüng-chúng à?
5. Chung-yeung wai-uên ooi\*, ts'uên kwòk yaũ keí toh kòh à?
6. Chung-yeung wai-uên ooi\* kè yâm-mô hai mi-yě à?
7. Teí-fong wai-uên ooi\*, ts'uên kwòk yaũ keí toh kòh à?
8. K'òng-chin kè shí-haü, ching-foó shik-fòng hó toh yân-faân\*. Tím-kaaí à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

mō-paî pâî 'fraud, corruption, evil practices, drawbacks, demerits'; lêî pâî 'merits and demerits'; mō-paî 'corruption, to practice fraud'

fung-keî keî 'disciplines, records, to record, annals'; kwan keî 'military discipline'; fung-keî 'discipline'; kwan fung-keî 'military discipline'

ch'ing-kaaî ch'ing 'to punish, to reprove'; ch'ing-kaaî 'to punish'; Kung-Mō Yān-Uēn Fung-Keî Ch'ing-Kaaî Waî-Uēn-Ooî\* 'Commission for the Disciplinary Punishment of Public Functionaries'

tsin-yām tsin 'to recommend'; tsin-yām 'recommended rank (the ranking system used for the Government officials in the Chinese National Government)'

koon-uēn officials; haāng-ching koon-uēn 'administrative officials'

waî-yām delegated rank (the ranking system used for the government officials in the Chinese National Government) to appoint, to designate

kaāk-san to reform, reform

kaam-yūk prison, jail; a.f.: yūk

ts'ing-kît sanitation, clean; a.f.: kît

waî-shang hygiene, hygienic, sanitary; kung-kūng waî-shang 'public health'

faāt-līng laws, orders and regulations promulgated by the government

foō to append, to attach, to add to, to enclose, to adhere to, an appendix, an annex, accessory, dependent on, near to; foō ch'it 'attached to (building, organization)'

kōm-fà uēn\* kōm-fà 'to reform (prisoners)'; kōm-fà uēn\* 'reformatory'

kung ch'eūng workshop; AN: kōh

yān-faân\* prisoner, inmate; a.f.: faân-yān, kaam-faân\*, faân\*

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 55

yàn-ts'aàt yàn 'to print, to stamp an official seal, a stamp, a mark'; yàn-ts'aàt 'to print, printing'; yàn-ts'aàt pán 'printed matter'; yàn-ts'aàt kei 'printing machine'; yàn-ts'aàt kung-sz 'printing plant, printing company'

tau mùk tau (colloq) 'work in wood, to touch, to tease'; mùk 'wood'; tau mùk 'carpentry'; tau-mùk-ló 'a carpenter'

chik pò chik 'to weave, to knit'; pò 'cloth'; chik pò 'cloth-weaving'; chik-pò kei 'cloth-weaving machine'

kung-ngai ngai 'skill, a trade'; kung-ngai 'handicraft, a trade, skill work'

shik-fông shik 'to set free, to release, to loosen, to open out, to explain'; fông 'to release (a prisoner), to set free (a prisoner)'; shik-fông 'to release (a prisoner)'

kwan-yîk yîk 'military service, to serve as a servant, to employ as a servant'; kwan-yîk 'military service'

tông-tsòk to treat as, to regard as, to represent, to stand in the place of, to use one thing as the equivalent of another, to consider as being; a.f.: tông wai, tông shi, tông

chín-ch'eūng battlefield; AN: kòh

ts'aan-fai ts'aan 'to injure, to oppress, disabled, a remnant, residue'; fai 'disabled, to abolish, to discontinue'; ts'aan-fai 'disabled, disablement, disability'; synonym: ts'aan

t'ò-yīng term of imprisonment, imprisonment; yaü-k'eī  
t'ò-yīng 'certain number of years of imprisonment'; mō-k'eī  
t'ò-yīng 'life imprisonment'

ts'ui-siu to cancel, to rescind, to abrogate, to countermand, cancellation

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 56

ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Mung-Koó kè tei-ying hei-hau hai tim ká?

Hoh Chung-Kaaú: Mung-Koó hai Á-Chau chung-sam yat-koh taaí ko-uén, mìn-tsik taaí-yeúk\* sei-paák-maán kung-leí. Hoi-pát yat-ts'in-ng-paák kung-ch'èk. Chau-wai yau ko taaí shaan-mák wai-iú. Chung-kaan yau Kwoh-Pik Sha-Mók. Hei-hau hai taaí-lúk hei-hau. Yau kik í t'ung kik laang kè pìn-fà. Tei-fong ch'iu-shap t'ung ué leung shiú, líng-tò kaang-chung kw'an-naán.

C: Neí hoh-í kóng há Mung-Koó yán kè yé pei ngoh-tei t'eng mà?

H: Mung-Koó kè yán pón-loi hai í yau-múk wai shaang. Hau-loi k'ui-tei ts'am-leúk Uén-Tung, Kán-Tung, Au-Chau mán-fà tsui tsó kè kwòk-ka. Tsoí Shing-Kat-Sz-Hón (yat-yat-lúk-í nín chí yat-í-í-ts'at nín) líng-tò chí há, Mung-Koó shing-laáp yat-koh taaí tai-kwòk. Sháp-sei shai-kei chí hau, yat-toí kwong-wing kè tai-kwòk k'ing-tó, líng-tò Mung-Koó pìn wai saam taaí pô---Ngoí Mung-Koó kè pak Mung-Koó yán, noi Mung-Koó kè naám Mung-Koó yán, t'ung sai-pak pô kè sai Mung-Koó yán.

C: Sháp-ts'at shai-kei kè shí-hau, ní chúng hò chín kè mán-tsúk pei Moón-Ts'ing t'ung-chí, hai mà?

H: Hai. K'ui-tei pei Moón-Ts'ing fan wai m-shiú pô-lòk t'ung mǎng-k'eí, shoh-í Moón-Ts'ing tak-tó t'ung-chí.

C: Ngoí Mung-Koó suen-pò tük-laáp hai mà?

H: K'ui-tei ch'ing tsz-kei wai Mung-Koó Yán-Mán Kung-wóh Kwòk. Yat-kaú-sei-lúk nín Chung-Kwòk Ching-Foó shing-ying Ngoí Mung-Koó tük-laáp.

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 56

Capt Cheung: What are the geographical features and climate of Mongolia, Sir?

Lt Colonel Hoh: Mongolia is a great plateau in the heart of the Asiatic continent. The area occupies about 4,000,000 square kilometers. It lies about 1,500 meters above sea level and is enclosed on all sides by high mountain ranges, with the Gobi Desert located in the center. It has a continental climate, subject to variable extremes of heat and cold. The humidity, coupled with a scarcity of rainfall, renders agriculture highly impracticable.

C: Can you tell us something about the Mongolian people?

H: The Mongolians are tribes who originally carried on a nomadic existence, and who later assaulted the oldest civilized states of the Far East, the Near East and Europe. Under the leadership of Genghis Khan (1162-1227) the Mongols founded a world empire. After the 14th century, the states of the once glorious empire collapsed and the Mongols resolved into three main groups---the Northern Mongols of Outer Mongolia, the Southern Mongols of Inner Mongolia, and the Western Mongols in the Northwestern region.

C: In the 17th century, was this warring race ruled by the Manchus?

H: Yes, they were divided by the Manchus into a number of

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 56

tribal leagues and banners in accordance with Manchu custom, thus consolidating the Manchu rule.

C: Is it a fact that Outer Mongolia proclaimed independence?

H: Yes. It called itself Mongolian People's Republic. The Chinese Government recognized its independence in 1946.





READING MATERIAL

西中，最與之多。高原不漠，高亞差沙，蒙古在高原為，高原高積，高藏面，五古西份，有蒙與部漠，原·積大沙，高二面，壁之之其繞戈，名中·圍為著其北脈，漢國是之山沙，中原國有之，高中圍名，藏，在周著

因適宜定遊，關不適固之，有，不無戰，他大故民好，其極，人一，及化難份為，，變困部成生，係候輸大人為，關氣運，古牧之之通展蒙遊，形季交發令以地四因之·亦理年又業業民地一·商職人，於以種與與，由所耕業處族，，於工住民，素宜於之牧

民是帝，蒙古·，蒙，蒙地葉內，導各中，領洲紀蒙，汗歐世外，思至四，吉遠十份，成境·部三，國史三葉，榮為末國光變，紀帝之古，世大族蒙，二一民；，十立古倒蒙，建蒙傾北，族為國西

蒙承，立年，成六，立九，獨一，佈於，宣府，蒙政，外民，後·國，勝利國，勝和立，戰共獨，抗民蒙，古，人外，認

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 56

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk yaũ nǎ-kòh ko-uēn, k'ei-chung yaũ leũng-kòh kiù-tsô mi-yě à?
2. Mũng-Koó kè taaî pô-fân mîn-tsik hai mi-yě à?
3. Tsui chuè-ming kè sha-mòk kiù tsô mi-yě à?
4. Sha-mòk kè tei-fong kè t'in-hei hai tím kà?
5. Hâ-t'in hó ît, tung-t'in hó laäng. Ni chúng hai taaî-lûk hei-haũ yik-waâk hai hoi-yeũng hei-haũ à?
6. Mũng-Koó yân hai yat-chúng tím-yeũng\* kè mán-tsûk à?
7. Yaũ-mûk mán-tsûk kè shaang-oôt tsâp-kwaân hai tím kà?
8. Tím-kaaî Mũng-Koó yân ooĩ shing wai yaũ-mûk mán-tsûk à?
9. Mũng-Koó taaî tai-kwòk hai yaũ pin-kòh kìn-laâp kà?
10. Kwòk-Mán Ching-Foó kei shí shing-ying Ngoi Mũng tûk-laâp à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 56

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

hoi-pât sea level

kung-ch'èk ch'èk 'foot (measurement)'; kung-ch'èk 'meters'

chau-wai chau 'all round, everywhere, comprehensive, surname'; chau-wai 'all round, encircled on all sides'

shaan-mâk mountain ranges

wai-iũ to encircle, to surround, to enclose; synonym: iũ, wai

chung-kaan center, between, among, in the midst of; synonym: chung

Kwoh-Pik Sha-Môk sha 'sand'; sha-môk 'desert'; Kwoh-Pik (Woh-Pik) 'Gobi'; Kwoh-Pik Sha-Môk 'Gobi Desert'

kîk ît extreme hot; kî lǎng 'extreme cold'

pîn-fâ to transform, to undergo a change, evolution, metamorphosis; synonym: pîn, m-t'ũng

ch'iũ-shap shap 'wet, damp, moist'; ch'iũ 'damp, moist, tide'; ch'iũ-shap 'damp, humid'

uě leũng uě 'to rain, raining, rain'; leũng 'quantity, capacity'; uě leũng 'rainfall'

yaũ-mûk nomads; yaũ-mûk mǎn-tsûk 'race of nomads'

i...wai shaang 'to earn one's living in..., to depend one's living on..., to make a living...'; i yaũ-mûk wai shaang 'to carry on a nomadic existence (as Mongols)'

Kân-Tung Near East

Shing-Kat-Sz-Hôn Genghis Khan

lǐng-tô to lead, to guide, to direct, leadership; tsoi... lǐng-tô chi hâ 'under the leadership of...'

tai-kwòk tai 'emperor, king, imperial'; tai-kwòk 'empire'; taaî tai-kwòk 'big empire'

yat-toî a generation, a dynasty, one's whole life, AN for empire; yat-toî taaî tai-kwòk 'a big empire'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 56

kwong-wing glorious, glory, pride, things to be proud of;  
synonym: wing; kwong-wing sí 'history of glory, glorious history'

k'ing-tó k'ing 'to overthrow, to upset, to collapse, to fall, to subvert'; tó 'to fall, to overthrow, to turn upside down'; k'ing-tó 'to overthrow (a country, a regime), overthrown, (a regime, a country), to be attracted by a woman's beauty'

hò to be fond of, to like, to be addicted to, to love;  
hò chin 'warlike, warring'

t'ung-chî to rule, a county, to reign (a county)

pô-lôk tribes

māng-k'eī banners (regional division in Mongolia)

suen-pô to announce, to proclaim, to declare; a.f.: suen

ch'ing to call, to name, to declare, to praise, suitable, agreeable; ch'ing wai 'to call as'; ch'ing...wai 'to call...as'; pei ch'ing wai... 'to be called as...'

shing-ying to recognize, to acknowledge, to admit, to confess; synonym: ying

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

ORAL MATERIAL

Paāk Shiū-Kaaù: Sai-Tsông ne? Sai-Tsông kè tei-yíng t'ūng hei-haù tím kà?

Hōh Chung-Kaaù: Sai-Tsông ko-uēn hoí-pât ko-kwòh nǎ-t's'in mǎi-tât. Shaan-kuk ko-kwòh saam-t's'in kung-ch'èk. Ts'uēn kwòk ko-uēn paau-k'oòt Sai-Tsông poón-pô, Sai-Hong, Ts'ing-Hoí. Sai-Hong t'ūng Ts'ing-Hoí haí Chung-Kwòk shaáng-fân, taân-haí Sai-Tsông poón-pô haí Chung-Kwòk kwòk kǐng chi noí kè tsz-chi k'ui.

P: Sai-Tsông yaũ keí toh yān-haù à?

H: Sai-Tsông mǎ yān-haù t'jū ch'ā. Kít-kwóh yām-hōh yān-haù shò-tsž to shǐng mǎn-t'ai. Tsui hóh-nāng kè koó-kai, Sai-Tsông poón-pô waák-ché yaũ ts'at-sháp-nǎ-mǎn yān.

P: Sai-Tsông kè lǐk-sz haí tím kà?

J: Sai-Tsông kè lǐk-sz ch'ung-moón-saaí shān-wā\* t'ūng chuēn-k'ei kè koó-sz. Sai-Tsông yān wā k'uĩ-tei kè tsó-sin haí shān kè haù-toí. Taân-haí kǎn-toí lǐk-sz ka wā Sai-Tsông tsúk t'ūng Mǎng-koó tsúk shúk-ue yat tsúk. Sui-in Sai-Tsông t'ūng Chung-Kwòk kè kwaan-haí tsž koó pat-tsuēt, taân-haí yaũ T'ōng Ch'iu kè shi-haù hei chi wai hín-chuè. Sháp-saam shai-keí Mǎng-Koó ching-fúk Sai-Tsông kè shi-haù, Sai-Tsông hōp-pǐng Chung-Kwòk Tai-Kwòk. Tong Chung-Wā-Mǎn-Kwòk shǐng-laáp kè shi-haù, Sai-Tsông suen-pò t'uēt-lei Chung-Kwòk í "túk-laáp". Haù-loi Kwòk-Mǎn Ching-Foó shǐng-laáp chi haù, ching-foó t'ūng Sai-Tsông kè kwaan-haí chūk-tsím\*

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

koi-shîn. Ching-foó tsó-chik Mŭng Tsông Wai-Uên Ooi\* ch'ué-  
leĩ uě Mŭng-Koó t'ŭng Sai-Tsông yaũ-kwaan kè sŕ-hông.

P: Pin-kòh haĩ Sai-Tsông kè t'úng-chĩ-ché?

H: Taât-Laaĩ La-Mā tsoĩ mǎn-sŕ sheŭng t'ŭng tsung-kaaũ sheŭng  
haĩ Sai-Tsông tsui ko t'úng-chĩ-ché.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

Major White: What about Tibet? What are the geographical features and climate of Tibet?

Lt Colonel Hōh: The Tibetan Plateau is more than 5,000 meters above sea level, the valleys more than 3,000 meters in altitude. The entire tableland includes Tibet proper, Sikang, and Chinghai. The latter two are regular provinces of the Chinese Republic while Tibet proper is a "self-governing territory" within the boundaries of China.

W: What is the population of Tibet?

H: There is no census in Tibet and consequently any figure on Tibetan population is open to question. The most probable estimate is 750,000 in Tibet proper.

W: What is the history of Tibet?

H: The history of Tibet is full of myths and legends. The Tibetans believe that their ancestors were descendants of a certain god or spirit. But modern historians place the Tibetan race in the Mongolian family. Though relations between Tibet and China date from time immemorial without interruption, they first came into prominence in the days of the Tang Dynasty. With the Mongol conquest in the 13th century, Tibet was incorporated into the Chinese Empire. When the Republic was established, the Tibetans declared themselves "independent" from China. Later, with the establishment of the National Government, relations



## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

between the Government and Tibet have been steadily improving. The Mongolian and Tibetan Affairs Commission was organized by the National Government to handle matters concerning Mongolia and Tibet.

**W:** Who is the ruler in Tibet?

**H:** The Dalai Lama is the supreme ruler both in civil and religious affairs in Tibet.



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

白：邊個係西藏嘅統治者？

何：達賴喇嘛在民事上同宗教上係西藏最高統治者。

READING MATERIAL

中多脈環，在地山理氣候，其該地氣候，一·其該地與陸之突脈形大高原未山地於高千亞於屬大五拉由亦五為馬·氣候·中國約喜脈氣冷·中拔為山之極為海脈之地天高原·山高該冬高部之最，藏南高界係熱西西最世關極之，全之天國山為境夏

來實，從確，甚來不，以據萬，歷史根五，歷·有字七，自數為，少調人口，大人總，地之其，藏實，西確計，未之有估

種够教密，他導會為，其報社藏，及聞，西難新濟稱，困之經人，輸藏，界運西治世，通於政以，交對之所，之面藏楚，藏方西清，西各對甚，於，人不，由素般形，種因一情，故育國

藏史思府，代吉政，事近成國民，故干·國，奇若族至，傳但一直立，與·於·獨，話代屬併而，神後同合國，滿之古之中，充神蒙將離，史為與，脫，歷先藏時後，之祖西藏然，藏其明西，西稱証服後，人家自己征立，汗成

政，在民族，喇藏，刺西，賴西，達為領，者上，治者上，高與，最上，之精神，藏精，西，治上

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

QUESTIONS

1. Sai-Tsông hái Chung-Kwòk kè pin pîn à?
2. Sai-Tsông kè yān-haú taaí-yeük\* yaũ keí toh à?
3. Ts'uēn Shai-Kaaí kè yān tui Sai-Tsông kè ts'ing-ying to m-hai keí ts'ing-ch'óh. Tím-kaaí à?
4. "Shān-wâ\*" t'ūng "chuēn-k'ei" hái tím-kaaí à?
5. Kwaan-ue Sai-Tsông t'ūng Mūng-Koó kè kwaan-hai, kân-toi lík-sz ka tím wâ à?
6. Sai-Tsông keí shí peí Mūng-Koó yān ching-fūk à?
7. Sai-Tsông keí shí t'uēt-lei Chung-Kwòk tūk-laáp à?
8. Pin-kòh hái Sai-Tsông kè tsui ko t'ung-chí-ché à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

- maĩ-tât meters; a.f.: kung-ch'èk
- shaan-kuk valley
- poón-pô (geography)† poón 'original, authentic'; poón-pô 'proper'
- Sai-Hong Sikang Province
- Ts'ing-Hoí Chinghai Province
- shaáng-fân shaáng 'province, state'; shaáng-fân 'province, state'
- ch'ung-moön moön 'full, filled, full of, satisfied, the whole of, complete, filled up'; ch'ung-moön 'full of'
- saaì all, all gone, entirely, completely; ch'ung-moön-saaì 'full of'
- shān-wâ\* shān 'deity, God, spirit, divine, energy'; shān-wâ\* 'myths'
- chuên-k'eí legend, legendary
- koò-sz̄ story, tale
- tsó-sin ancestors
- haũ-toî toî 'generation, to replace, in place of, for, instead, a substitute, acting'; haũ-toî 'descendants, following generations'; haũ yat-toî 'next generation'; hâ yat-toî 'next generation'
- ka used as a suffix to indicate the agent, it indicates a specialist in any branch, a class or school, equivalent to -ist, -ian; a house, a family, a home, relatives; used as a prefix--my, said of one elder than oneself, ie. ka-hing 'my elder brother'; lik-sz̄ ka 'historian'
- kān-toî contemporary, modern
- shūk-ue to belong to, connected with, related
- tsz̄ koó koó 'ancient'; tsz̄ koó 'from of old, ever since ancient time'

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 57

tsuê<sup>t</sup> to cut off, to break off, to interrupt, decidedly, extremely, very, used to strengthen a negative, ie. tsuê<sup>t</sup> pat 'never'; pat-tsuê<sup>t</sup> 'without interruption'; tsz̄ koó pat-tsuê<sup>t</sup> 'without interruption since ancient time'

T'ōng Ch'iu Tang Dynasty; a.f.: T'ōng

yaū...heī since..., from... on

chì wai to the utmost degree, extremely; a.f.: chì, tsui, fei-sheūng-chì

ching-fûk ching 'to make war, to subjugate, to quell'; fûk 'to serve, to submit, to be willing'; ching-fûk 'to compel submission by war'

hōp-ping ping 'to combine, two together, united, to annex'; hōp-ping 'to incorporate, to annex, to integrate'

tong...kê shī-haū during the time..., when...

t'uêt-leī t'uêt 'to undress, to strip, to cast off, to escape from, to slip off'; leī 'to leave, away from, apart from, distance'; t'uêt-leī 'to cast off, to separate from, to escape from'

ch'uê-leī to handle, to manage, to dispose

t'úng-chī-ché ruler, one who rules the country

Taât-Laaī La-Mā Dalai Lama (leader of Tibet)

tsung-kaaù religion; a.f.: kaaù

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

## ORAL MATERIAL

Cheung Sheung-Wai: Tsoi ngoi-kwok ke Chung-Kwok yan toh-sho hai pin shue ke Chung-Kwok yan a?

Hoh Chung-Kaaui: Paak-fan chi kau-shap-kau tsoi ngoi-kwok ke Chung-Kwok yan hai naam fong yan. Kaan-chik uen-ts'uēn hai yau Kwong-Tung Shaang Kwong-Sai Shaang t'ung Fuk-Kin Shaang lai ke.

C: Chung-Kwok yan kei shi hoi-shau i man hui ngoi-kwok ka?

H: Taa-yeuk\* i-ts'in nin ts'in tsoh-yau\*, tong Ts'un-Ch'i-wong-Tai hop-ping in-tsoi ke Uet-Naam, shing wai Chung-Kwok Tai-Kwok yat po-fan ling-to ke shi-hau, naam fong yan i-king hoi-ch'i heung Tung-Naam A kòk kwok i man. Chi-to Sung Ch'iu ke shi-hau, m-shiu naam fong yan hui Naam-Yeung\* kòk kwok. Chi Ming Ch'iu shi, wa-Naam ke yan hai koh ti tei-fong ching-chi sheung i-king yau ho taa shai-lik. Chi-to Ts'ing Ch'iu ke shi-hau, sui-in kam-chi i man hui ngoi-kwok, taan-hai i-in m-shiu Kwong-Tung yan kai-tsuk ch'ut kwok. K'ui-tei ts'ang-king hai Hoh-Laan t'ung Sai-Paan-Nga ke shuk-t'ó shau-kwoh taa t'o-shaat. K'ui-tei yik-to pei ho toh koh kwok-ka lei-yung tso hop-yeuk ke lo-kung. In-tsoi k'ui-tei shau-to ho toh kwok-ka p'aaí wá, t'ung chung-chung k'eí-shi ke m-hó toi-ué.

C: Tsoi ngoi-kwok kui-laui ke Chung-Kwok yan yan-sho yau kei toh a?

H: Kan-kui Haang-Ching Uen\* K'iu-Mo Wai-Uen Ooi\* tsui-kan po-



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

kò, tsoí ngoí-kwòk kui-lau kè Chung-Kwòk yān tsúng-kūng yaũ  
yat-ts'in-ng̃-paāk-maân ĩ sheūng. K'eī-chung T'aai-Kwòk yaũ  
sei-paāk-maân yān. Mǎ-Loi-À yaũ ĩ-paāk-ng̃-shâp-maân yān.

Yān-Tò-Nai-Sai-À yaũ ĩ-paāk-maân yān. Uêt-Naām yat-paāk-maân  
yān. Taan-tūk Sing-Kà-Poh yat shuè, saam-fân chi ĩ yān-háu  
hái Kwóng-Tung yān t'ūng Fuk-Kin yān.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

Capt Cheung: What part of China are the Chinese living abroad originally from?

Lt Colonel Hōh: 99 per cent of the Chinese living in foreign countries are southern Chinese. Practically all of them are from Canton (Kwangtung) and Kwangsi and Fukien.

C: When did the Chinese start to migrate to foreign countries?

H: The southern Chinese migration into the Southeast Asian countries began some 2,000 years ago when Chin Shih Huang Ti (221 B.C.) made the present Vietnam a part of his empire. Chinese emigrants went in large numbers to the South Sea countries during the Sung Dynasty (960-1127 A.D.) and Chinese political influence was strongly felt during the reign of the Ming (1280-1368 A.D.) The Ching (1644-1911 A.D.) Dynasty banned migration to foreign territories. Nevertheless, parties of Chinese emigrants, mostly from Canton, moved continuously to foreign countries. They were subject to wholesale massacre in Dutch and Spanish possessions at one time. They were also objects of exploitation in the form of contract labor in many countries. At present they are generally excluded from many countries and subject to discrimination of various kinds and degrees.

C: What is the number of Chinese living abroad?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

H: According to a recent report issued by the Overseas Chinese Affairs Commission of the Executive Yuan, there are at least 15,000,000 Chinese living in foreign countries among which there are 4,000,000 in Thailand, 2,500,000 in Malay, 2,000,000 in Indonesia, 1,000,000 in Vietnam. In Singapore alone, 2/3 of the population are Cantonese and Fukienese.

張上尉：在國外人份方省幾千在領東候明治係地過家受國地視國行外  
 何中校：國約二現份向時至政朝但佢受國地過家受國地視國行外  
 張何：中大

既係廣東併部始既方清國土個佢歧  
 處國東？帝國經宋各的至去出既好現種  
 邊中廣？皇帝已到洋個民續牙被同  
 係由國始國人至南係力移繼班都工  
 數國係外秦中方去人勢止人西亦勞華  
 多外全既去當為南民人既大禁東同地既排  
 人，在完黎民，成，移方南好然廣蘭佢約家  
 國九直省移右，候國南華有雖少荷，合國過  
 中十簡建首左南時各少，經，唔係殺做多待中務既  
 既？九，福開前越既亞唔時已候然經屠用好好既僑留  
 國呀之人同時年既土南，朝上時依曾大利倒唔留院居  
 外呀之人同時年既土南，朝上時依曾大利倒唔留院居  
 在國外人份方省幾千在領東候明治係地過家受國地視國行外

張何：在根據

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

人尼人係  
萬度萬口  
百印百人  
四·一·二  
有人南之  
國萬越分  
泰十·三  
中五人處  
其百萬一  
·二百坡  
上有二架  
以亞有星  
萬來亞獨  
百馬西單  
廣東人同

## READING MATERIAL

，領越漸該力  
 時，如勢各勢  
 體時，國在濟  
 政盛國因人經  
 主最各後國，  
 君國亞·中力  
 在中南國但勢  
 尚·東等·方  
 國潤及亞立地  
 中廣，西獨如  
 當在國尼後，  
 ，現韓度先大  
 前比之印土極  
 以土在，屬仍  
 國領現甸處力  
 民之括緬各勢  
 國包，，之  
 中土南衰地等

外唐廣部為根僑  
 國有甚一份·華  
 向後方之部人之  
 始·地牙大建留  
 開帝之班，福居  
 個皇氏西中，外  
 一始移與人人國九  
 第秦·蘭國西在十  
 ，之朝荷中廣，九  
 中朝明及之，告之  
 代秦，，國人報份  
 朝為朝國該東民百  
 各者元各各廣僑佔  
 國民，亞在如之人  
 中移朝南，，面方  
 在與宋東土人方南  
 畧，括屬南各，  
 侵朝包份華據中

，約華  
 廣合·  
 甚之策  
 圍低政  
 範最華  
 業及排  
 職，施  
 之業實  
 外農家  
 國，國  
 在業干·  
 人商若害  
 國，年損  
 中業近之  
 工惜大  
 大可極

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

QUESTIONS

1. Chung-Kwòk tsui k'eūng-shīng kě shī-haū, līng-t'ó yaū kei taaí à?
2. Tung-Naām-Ā paau-k'oòt pin kei kòh kwòk à?
3. Hai Chung-Kwòk kòk kòh ch'iu-toi, tai-yat-kòh hoi-ch'i heung ngoi-kwòk i-mān kě hai pin ch'iu à?
4. Ch'ui-chòh Ts'ūn Ch'iu chi ngoi, chūng yaū pin ch'iu à?
5. Ī Man kě tei-fong paau-k'oòt pin ti kwòk-ka à?
6. Heung ngoi-kwòk i mān kě Chung-Kwòk yān taaí pō-fān hai pin shuē yān à?
7. Hai ngoi-kwòk kui-laū kě wā-k'iu, naām fong yān chīm paāk-fān chi kei à?
8. Ti wā-k'iu hai ngoi-kwòk tsò ti mi-yě à?
9. Hai Saam-Faān-shī kě Chung-Kwòk yān, taaí pō-fān hai pin shaáng yān à?

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

## VOCABULARY AND NOTES

- naām fong yān southerners, southern Chinese
- kaán-chîk almost, practically, simply; synonym: ch'a-m-toh
- Kwóng-Sai Shaáng Kwangsi Province
- Fuk-Kîn Shaáng Fukien Province
- wōng-tai king, emperor; synonym: wōng, tai; Ts'un-Ch'i-  
Wōng-Tai 'Chin Shih Huang Ti (221 B.C.), the King of Chin Dynasty'  
 a.f.: Ts'un-Ch'i-Wōng; Ts'un Ch'iu 'Chin Dynasty'
- Uêt-Naām Vietnam; abbr.: Uêt
- līng-t'ó t'ó 'soil, territory'; līng-t'ó 'territory, soil'
- ī mām immigration, emigration, migration
- Sūng Ch'iu Sung Dynasty (960-1127 A.D.)
- Naām-Yeūng\* South Sea, South Pacific
- Ming Ch'iu Ming Dynasty (1280-1368 A.D.)
- shai-lîk influence, authority, strength; synonym: shai
- Ts'ing Ch'iu Ching Dynasty (1644-1911 A.D.)
- kām-chí to prohibit, to forbid, to ban, to outlaw, to  
 restrain, against; a.f.: kām
- ch'ut kwòk to go abroad; a.f.: ch'ut yeūng
- Hōh-Laan Holland, Dutch
- shûk-t'ó shûk 'to belong to, to be subject to, connected  
 with, depending on, colonies'; shûk-t'ó 'colonies, tributary  
 State'
- t'ō-shaät shaät 'to kill, to murder, to execute, to  
 slaughter'; t'ō-shaät 'slaughter, massacre, to slaughter'; a.f.:  
t'ō
- hōp-yeük a contract; a.f.: hōp-t'ūng
- p'aaī wā p'aaī 'to expel, to dispose, to exclude, to push,  
 to clear out, a row, a line, a rank, a platoon of soldiers, to



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 58

place in order'; p'aaí wā 'to expel Chinese, to exclude Chinese, anti-Chinese'; p'aaí ngoí 'to expel foreigners, anti-foreign'

k'eí-sz̄ discrimination, to discriminate; chúng-tsúk k'eí-sz̄ 'racial discrimination'

toí-uê treatment, wages, to treat; m-hó kè toí-uê 'mis-treatment'

kui-laū kui 'to dwell, to reside, to live'; kui-laū 'to dwell, to reside, to live'; kui-laū ngoí-kwòk 'foreign settlement, to reside in foreign country'

T'aaí-Kwòk Thailand; abbr.: T'aaí

Mǎ-Loí-À Malaya; abbr.: Mǎ-Loí, Mǎ

Yàn-Tô-Nai-Sai-À Yàn-Tô 'India'; Yàn-Tô-Nai-Sai-À 'Indonesia'

taan-túk alone, only, single, solely, merely; a.f.: taan, túk

Sing-Kà-P oh Singapore

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 59

ORAL MATERIAL

- Paāk Shiù-Kaaù: Hoi-Ngoi Wā-K'iu hai hoi-ngoï kòk teí tsó-chik-chóh keí-ts'in-kòh t'uēn-t'ai. Kòh ti t'uēn-t'ai paa-k'oòt ti mi-yě à?
- Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Paa-k'oòt chik-íp t'uēn-t'ai, shě-ooi\* t'uēn-t'ai, oi kwòk t'uēn-t'ai. Taaí toh-shò hai t'üng-tsong t'üng-heung kè yān tsaü-teí tsó-chik kè ooi-koón t'üng kung-shòh.
- P: Ooi-yik Tai-I-Ts'z Shai-Kaaí Taaí Chín meí paaü-faàt ts'in, pat-shiú Wā-K'iu ooi kau-tsaí kam ooi kwòk. Mooí uēt kè kam ngaák taaí-yeük\* keí toh à?
- H: Mooí uēt kam ngaák yeük wai ts'at-ts'in-maân uēn.
- P: Kóm, mooí nín k'iu-ooi kè tsúng ngaák yeük wai shâp-yik uēn. Kòh ti ts'in\* kè yüng-t'ò hai tím kà?
- H: Sui-in taaí pô-fân yüng-lai tsip-tsaí k'iu-paaü kè ts'an-shúk, taân-hai tui-ue ching-foó kè shau chi p'ing-hāng, yik yaü yaü-lei kè ying-heung.
- P: Chín haü, Hoi-Ngoi Wā-K'iu ts'āng-king taaí-leüng t'au tsz, pong-chòh Tsz-Yaü Chung-Kwòk kìn-ch'it. K'ui-teí t'au tsz kè fong-shik hai tím kà?
- H: T'au tsz fong-shik paa-k'oòt kuen foón, tsz-kam, kei-hei, yān-ts'oi táng...
- P: Hai ngoi-kwòk yaü keí ts'in-kaan Chung-Mān hòk-haaü, kaaü-shaü Wā-K'iu tsz-tai. Ts'z chúng hòk-haaü yüng mi-yě wā\* kaaü-shaü à?
- H: Paāk-fān chi kau-shâp-kau í sheüng yüng Kwóng-Tung wā\* shaü fòh.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 59

Major White: Chinese in foreign lands have several thousand organizations. What do these organizations include?

Lt Colonel Hōh: They include professional organizations, social organizations and patriotic societies. But most of them are local guilds organized by people from the same clan or from the same native district.

W: It is recalled that before the outbreak of World War II, numerous loyal sons of China abroad remitted relief funds to China. What was the amount per month?

H: About \$70,000,000 per month.

W: In that case, a sum of about \$1 billion per year has been sent by the Chinese abroad. How was the money spent?

H: Although a greater part was sent to the families and relatives of these overseas Chinese, it played an important and advantageous part in China's national receipts and expenditures.

W: A number of investments were also made by the Chinese abroad to help free China's reconstruction. In what form were these investments made?

H: In the form of donation, capital, machinery, and personnel ...

W: Several thousand Chinese schools for Chinese children were established in foreign countries. What language do they use in the courses of instruction?

H: 99 per cent use Cantonese language in their instruction. ✓

- 白少校：海外華僑，係社會各團體，包括宗鄉組織，咁幾千呀？
- 何中校：包括職業團體，係社會同公所。發前，不少
- 白：回憶第二次世界大戰未爆發前，不少
- 何：每月金額約為七千萬元。
- 白：每月金額約為十億元。
- 何：雖然大部份用黎接濟僑胞親屬，但有
- 白：戰後，海外僑胞曾經大量投資，幫助
- 何：投資方式包括捐款，資金，機器，人
- 白：喺外國有幾千間中文學校，教授華僑
- 何：百份之九十以上用廣東話教授。



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 59

QUESTIONS

1. Kan-kui K'iū-Mô Wai-Uên Ooi\* kè t'úng-kai shò-tsZ, Hoi-Ngoi Wā-K'iū taaî-yeük\* yaü kei toh yān à?
2. Ni kòh shò-tsZ taaî-yeük\* hai ts'uēn kwòk tsúng yān-háu kè kei fān chi kei à?
3. Wā-K'iū sui-in kui-laū kwòk ngoi, taân-hai k'ui-tei kè ts'an-shúk toh-shò hai pin shuè à?
4. Tím-kaaí ooi yaü kóm-yeung\* kè ts'ing-ying à?
5. Tím-kaaí ti Wā-K'iū kòm oi kwòk à?
6. Wā-K'iū shī-shī ooi foón ooi kwòk. Ti ts'in\* kè yung-t'ò hai tím kà?
7. K'iū-ooi tui-ue Chung-Kwòk kè king-tsaí ts'oi-ching yaü mi-yě pong-chòh à?
8. Kwòk ngoi ti Wā-K'iū tsZ-tai Chung-Mān hōk-haaü, toh-shò yung mi-yě wā\* shaü fòh kà?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 59

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

hoi-ngoí overseas, a foreign land, beyond the seas; Hoi-Ngoí Wá-K'íu 'Overseas Chinese, Chinese residing overseas'

t'uēn-t'ai a community, a society, an organization, a united body, a group

oi kwòk patriotic, loyal to one's country, to love one's country; oi-kwòk-ché 'patriot'

t'üng-tsung clansmen, of the same stock, people of the same clans

t'üng-heung people from the same native district or province, fellow-provincials, fellow-countrymen

tsau-teí from local, indigenous, on the spot

ooí-koón guildhall, guild, association

kung-shòh clan association

kaù-tsaì kam kaù-tsaì 'to relieve distress either with money or with food', a.f.: tsaì; kam 'money, fund, cash, gold'; kaù-tsaì kam 'relief fund'

ooí to return to, to return from, to relapse, Mohammedans, a time, an occasion, a chapter in a novel, a round (boxing, games, etc); Ooi-Kaaü 'Mohammedanism'; ooí kwòk 'to return to one's country'

ngaâk a fixed number, quota, a settled number, the forehead; ngaâk-shò 'a fixed number'; kam ngaâk 'a fixed number of funds'; tsung ngaâk 'total'

uēn a dollar, the Mongol Dynasty, the first, the head, the chief, the eldest, the principal

yik one hundred million; shâp yik 'a billion'

yüng-t'ò t'ò 'road, way, route'; yüng-t'ò 'usage, the use of'

tsip-tsaì to help (by money or supply), to supply

k'íu-paau paau 'the womb, brothers by the same mother, fellow-countrymen'; k'íu-paau 'countrymen residing overseas (Overseas Chinese)'; a.f.: Wá-K'íu 'Overseas Chinese'

ts'an-shūk family dependents, relatives, family connections

shau chi shau 'income, to receive what is due, to gather together, to collect, to close, to put away, to bind, to restrain, to bring to an end'; chi 'to spend, to pay, to withdraw (money), to pay out, branch'; shau chi 'receipts and expenditures'; shau chi p'ing-hāng 'balance of receipts and expenditures'

yaũ-leî leî 'advantage, profit, benefit, interest'; yaũ-leî 'advantageous, beneficial, good'; pat-leî 'disadvantageous'

yīng-heúng after-effects, influence, to influence, to affect

taaī leūng leūng 'quantity'; taaī leūng 'large scale, large quantity, large amount, magnanimous, liberal-minded'

tsẑ-yaũ free, freedom, liberty; Tsẑ-Yaũ Chung-Kwòk 'Free China'

fong-shik form, method

kuen foón kuen 'to donate, to contribute (money, etc)'; kuen foón 'to donate money, donation, contribution (money)'

tsz-kam capitals; a.f.: tsz-poón

tsẑ-taī children, juniors, young people

ts'ẑ (lit) this, here, now; a.f.: ni

shaũ fòh to teach, to give lecture, instruction



INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

ORAL MATERIAL

Paāk Shiū-Kaaù: Chung-Kwòk yān kě tsung-kaaù sùn-yeŭng haî tím kǎ?

Hòh Chung-Kaaù: Yaũ ti yān, yat fong-mîn paaì tsó-sin, t'ūng-shí yaũ yŭng kòk chŭng tsung-kaaù i-shik, hó-ts'z Uē Kaaù, Fât Kaaù, Ooi Kaaù, Tô Kaaù, Kei-Tuk Kaaù...Shóh-ĩ, tò-tai sùn mooĩ chŭng kaaù kě yān yaũ toh-shiú, shât-tsoĩ hó naān chi-tò.

P: Yaũ yān wā, Chung-Kwòk yān paaì tsó-sin, m̄-haî yat-chŭng tsung-kaaù, haî yat-chŭng mai-sŭn. Tím-kaaí ǎ?

H: Chung-Kwòk yān chŭng haaũ-tò. K'ui-teĩ ĩ-wai paaì tsó-sin, tsaũ ooĩ tak-tò tsó-sin kě tsuk-fuk t'ūng pó-oò. Kóm yeŭng\*, ngòh-teĩ hóh-ĩ wā-tak paaì tsó-sin m̄-haî yat-chŭng tsung-kaaù, pat-kwòh haî yat-chŭng lŭn-leĩ haāng-wai kě piú-ín.

P: Chung-Kwòk kě tsung-kaaù t'ūng Chung-Kwòk kě chit-hòk kě kwaan-haî tím kǎ?

H: K'ui-teĩ haî leŭng-chŭng m̄-t'ūng kě yě. Lai-uē, Tô Ka t'ūng Tô Kaaù. Tô Ka haî yat-chŭng chit-hòk, tò kaaù haî yat-chŭng tsung-kaaù. K'ui-teĩ pat-taān m̄-t'ūng, i-ch'é seung faán.

P: Chung-Kwòk chué-iù kě tsung-kaaù haî mi-yě ǎ?

H: Chung-Kwòk haî yat-kòh sùn-yeŭng tsz̄-yaũ kě kwòk-ka. Chué-iù kě tsung-kaaù haî Uē Kaaù, Fât Kaaù, Ooi Kaaù, Tô Kaaù, La-Mā Kaaù. Tsz̄-ts'ūng Sai-Fong kě T'in-Chué Kaaù t'ūng Kei-Tuk Kaaù ch'uēn yâp Chung-Kwòk chi haũ, yĭk yaũ m̄-shiú. yān sùn ni ti kaaù.

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

- Major White: What is the attitude of the Chinese people towards religion?
- Lt Colonel Hoh: Some Chinese may worship their ancestors and at the same time follow various religious rituals such as those of Confucianism, Buddhism, Mohammedanism, Taoism, Christianity... Therefore it is almost impossible to find out the number of people who believe in each religion.
- W: It is said that worship of ancestors by the Chinese is a superstitious practice and not a religion. What does that mean?
- H: The Chinese people emphasize filial piety. They believe that such worship would bring blessings and protection from the dead. Therefore, we can say that ancestor-worship is not a religion but an action demonstrating a filial and ethical practice.
- W: What is the relation between the Chinese religions and Chinese philosophies?
- H: They are two different things. For example, there is a distinction between Taoism as a philosophy and Taoism as a religion. Their teachings are not only different, but are contradictory.
- W: What are the chief religions in China?
- H: China is a country in which every person has the undisputed freedom of religious belief. The chief religions are

## INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

Confucianism, Buddhism, Mohammedanism, Taoism, Lamaism.

Since the introduction of Christianity to China, there have been many who believe in this religion.





INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

QUESTIONS

1. Shai-kaaí sheûng yâm-hôh yat-kôh kwòk-ka, to yaũ m-t'ûng kè tsung-kaaü. Tím-kaaí à?
2. Haaü-tô haí tím-kaaí à?
3. Chung-Kwòk yān tsung-kaaü sùn-yeũng kè fong-shik t'ûng Sai-Fong yān m-t'ûng. Tím-yeũng\* m-t'ûng à?
4. Paaí tsó-sin haí tím-kaaí à?
5. Yaũ yān wâ, paaí tsó-sin haí yat-chúng mai-sùn. Tím-kaaí à?
6. Mi-yě kiü tsô mai-sùn à?
7. Chung-Kwòk chué-iü kè tsung-kaaü haí mi-yě à?

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

VOCABULARY AND NOTES

sùn-yeŭng sùn 'to believe in, to believe, to trust, belief, letter'; sùn-yeŭng 'belief, faith'; tsung-kaaù sùn-yeŭng 'religious belief'; sùn-yeŭng tsz̄-yaū 'freedom of belief'

paai tsó-sin paai 'to worship, to bow, to honor, to respect, to visit'; tsó-sin 'ancestor'; paai tsó-sin 'to worship ancestors, worship of ancestors'

i-shik ceremonies, a rite, rituals; tsung-kaaù i-shik 'religious rituals'

Uē Kaaù kaaù 'religion, to teach, to instruct', a.f.: tsung-kaaù; Uē Kaaù 'Confucian religion'; Uē Ka 'Confucianist philosophy'

Fât Kaaù fât 'buddha'; Fât Kaaù 'Buddhist religion'; Fât Kà 'Buddhist philosophy'

Ooi Kaaù Mohammedan religion

Tô Kaaù Taoist religion; Tô Ka 'Taoist philosophy'

Kei-Tuk Kaaù Kei-Tuk 'Christ'; Kei-Tuk Kaaù 'Protestantism, Christian religion'

mai-sùn superstition, superstitious

chŭng to emphasize, to stress, to secure respect for, weighty (in the sense of important), severe, still, yet, moreover, else, too and; chŭng haaù-tô 'to emphasize filial piety'

haaù-tô haaù 'filial'; haaù-tô 'filial piety'; chŭng haaù-tô 'to emphasize filial piety'

tsuk fuk fuk 'blessings, happiness'; tsuk 'to bless, to invoke, to pray to'; tsuk fuk 'to invoke blessings, to bless'

pó-oô pó 'to protect, to guarantee'; oô 'to protect, protection'; pó-oô 'to protect, protection'

lŭn-leī ethics, ethical, filial and ethical

haŋg-wai behavior, conduct, act, action

INSTRUCTIONAL UNIT 60

piú-în manifestation, expression, to show, to express, to manifest, to reveal, to exhibit; synonym: piú

chít-hôk philosophy

Tô Ka Taoist philosophy

pat-taân not only, a.f.: m-chí (colloq), m-tsîng-chí

seung faán seung 'mutual, inter-'; faán 'contrary, but, instead of, to rebel, anti-, to turn over, to retreat'; seung faán 'opposite, on the contrary, contrary to'

La-Mā Kaaù Lama religion

Sai-Fong Western, Caucasian; Tung-Fong 'oriental, occidental'

T'in-Chué Kaaù T'in-Chué 'Lord'; T'in-Chué Kaaù 'Catholic religion'